

Министерство науки и высшего образования Российской Федерации  
Министерство образования Ставропольского края  
Государственное бюджетное образовательное учреждение  
высшего образования  
"СТАВРОПОЛЬСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ ПЕДАГОГИЧЕСКИЙ ИНСТИТУТ"



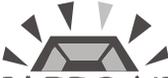
**О.С. Макарова, В.Г. Павленко, М.С. Кардунян**

---

**ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА  
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА: сборник  
упражнений для студентов языковых  
специальностей педагогических вузов**

---

УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

Ставрополь  
  
**СТАВРОПОЛЬ**  
издательство  
2019

УДК 811.111(075.8)

ББК 81.2=432.1

М 15

Печатается по решению Редакционно-издательского совета ГБОУ ВО "Ставропольский государственный педагогический институт".

**Рецензенты:**

*И.А. Скрипак, кандидат филологических наук, доцент кафедры Иностранных языков для гуманитарных и естественнонаучных специальностей СКФУ*

*И.И. Лизенко, кандидат филологических наук, доцент кафедры Иностранных языков для технических специальностей СКФУ*

*А.В. Донцов, кандидат филологических наук, доцент, заведующий кафедрой Теории и методики лингвистического образования и межкультурной коммуникации*

*Т.О. Боброва, кандидат филологических наук, доцент кафедры Теории и методики лингвистического образования и межкультурной коммуникации*

**Макарова, О.С., Павленко, В.Г., Кардумян, М.С.**

М 15

**Практическая грамматика английского языка: сборник упражнений для студентов языковых специальностей педагогических вузов : учебное пособие [Текст] / О.С. Макарова, В.Г. Павленко, М.С. Кардумян. – Ставрополь : Ставролит, 2019. – 200 с.**

**ISBN 978-5-907161-30-6**

**УДК 811.111(075.8)**

**ББК 81.2=432.1**

Целью настоящего пособия является овладение навыками устной и письменной английской речи, а также перевода. Для достижения данной цели были разработаны разнообразные по содержанию упражнения, в том числе основанные на аутентичных текстах, с учетом лексического запаса обучаемых. Упражнения, расположенные по мере возрастания трудностей, дают возможность преподавателю учитывать языковый уровень студентов.

Издание подойдет для самостоятельной аудиторной и внеаудиторной работы студентов в рамках изучения дисциплины «Практическая грамматика».

**ISBN 978-5-907161-30-6**

© Макарова О.С., Павленко В.Г., Кардумян М.С., 2019

© Ставропольский государственный педагогический институт, 2019

© Издательство "Ставролит", 2019

## THE NOUN

---

### 1. State the morphological composition of the following nouns.

Snow, sandstone, impossibility, widower, opinion, exclamation, passer-by, misunderstanding, inactivity, snowball, kingdom, anticyclone, mother-of-pearl, immobility, might, warmth, succession, ex-president, nurse, misdeed, wisdom, blackbird, attention, policeman, merry-go-round, girlhood, usefulness, fortune, friendship, statesman, brother-in-law, population, fellow-boarder, smelling-salt.

### 2. Give relevant feminine nouns.

A lion, a tiger, an actor, a poet, a man, an uncle, a husband, a brother, a grandfather, a son, a master, a baron, a count, a shepherd, a host.

### 3. Give relevant masculine nouns.

A lady, a girl, a niece, Mrs. Smith, a widow, a stewardess, a French woman, a cow, a queen, a princess, a duchess, a hen, a mother.

### 4. Put the following plural nouns.

Table, plate, fox, room, lady, knife, chair, bus, Negro, match, way, house, family, flag, town, wolf, country, lion, park, play, star, mountain, tree, shilling, king, waiter, queen, man, man, woman, woman, eye, shelf, box, city, boy, goose, watch, mouse, dress, toy, sheep, tooth, child, ox, deer, life, tomato.

### 5. Put the following phrases in the plural.

This tea-cup, this egg, that wall, that picture, this foot, that mountain, this lady, that window, this man, that match, this knife.

### 6. Put the following sentences in the plural.

1. This is a star. 2. This is a boy. 3. This is a baby. 4. That is a plate. 5. That is a flower, j 6. That is a bookshelf. 7. Is this a sofa? 8. Is this a bookcase? 9. Is this a man? 10. Is that a ball? 11. Is that a train? 12. Is that a plane? 13. Is the window open? 14. Is the door closed? 15. Is the boy near the window? 16. That is not a king, 17. That is not a queen. 18. That is not a bus. 19. This isn't a mountain. 20. That isn't a goose. 21. This isn't a mouse. 22. It is a sheep. 23. It is a cigarette. 24. It is a cat. 25. It is not a girl. 26. It isn't a bag. 27. It isn't a tree. 28. It is not a bad egg. 29. It is a good egg. 30. Isthataflower?

**7. Put the following sentences in the plural.**

1. This man is an engineer. 2. That woman is my sister. 3. This child is my son, 4. That goose is big. 5. This mouse is white. 6. This man is a doctor. 7. That woman is my cousin. She is a teacher 8. That girl is my niece. She is a pupil. 9. This girl has a blue sweater. 10. This boy has a good coat. 11. My uncle has a large flat. 12. There is a table in the room. 13. I have a good pen. My pen is in my pocket. 14. There is a flower in the vase. 15. This child's foot is sore. 16. This room is very large. 17. There is a match in the box. 18. Has this lady a knife? 19. There is a man and a woman in the street. 20. This lady is that gentleman's wife. 21. This shoe is too large for my foot. 22. The child is sitting on a bench. 23. My tooth is white. 24. This key is made of steel. 25. A potato is a vegetable and a cherry is a fruit. 26. This is my friend's study.

**8. Put the following sentences in the plural.**

1. This is a spider. 2. That is a snail. 3. This is a space film. 4. That is a cartoon. 5. This is a star. 6. This is a boy. 7. This is a baby. 8. That is a plate. 9. That is a flower. 10. That is a bookshelf. 11. Is this a sofa? 12. Is this a bookcase? 13. Is this a man? 14. Is that a ball? 15. Is that a train? 16. Is that a plane? 17. Is the window open? 18. Is the door closed? 19. Is the boy near the window? 20. That is not a king. 21. That is not a queen. 22. That is not a bus. 23. This isn't a mountain. 24. That isn't a goose. 25. This isn't a mouse. 26. It is a sheep. 27. It is a cigarette. 28. It is a cat. 29. It is not a girl. 30. It isn't a bag. 31. It isn't a tree. 32. It is not a bad egg. 33. It is a good egg. 34. Is that a flower?

**9. Put the following sentences in the plural.**

1. This cup is dirty. 2. That biscuit was tasty. 3. This hotel is very expensive but it's very nice. 4. There is a children's playground in the park. 5. That is a new supermarket in our town. 6. It's a delicious lemon pie for dessert. 7. It's a nice cotton dress for my niece. 8. This man is an engineer. 9. That woman is my sister. 10. This child is my son. 11. That goose is big. 12. This mouse is white. 13. This man is a doctor. 14. That woman is my cousin. She is a teacher. 15. That girl is my niece.

**10. Put the following sentences in the plural.**

1. This is my stocking. 2. He has a new suit. 3. This metal is very hard. 4. That ship is a Russian one. 5. I heard her voice. 6. His dog does not like bread. 7. The plate was on the table. 8. This town is very large. 9. I was

talking to her at the tram stop yesterday. 10. Is that girl your sister? 11. I shall give you my book. 12. This story will be a good one. 13. Is this a good match? 14. The boy put his book on the desk. 15. She took off her hat. 16. That house is new. 17. The young man put his hand in his pocket. 18. Is this student coming with us, too? 19. The woman didn't say anything. 20. Does she speak English?

### **11. Put the following sentences in the plural.**

1. What is that child's name? 2. The cat has caught a mouse. 3. There was a lady, a gentleman, a boy and a girl in the room. 4. In the farm-yard we could see an ox, a sheep, a cow and a goose. 5. Is this worker an Englishman or a German? -He is a Frenchman. 6. Why don't you eat this potato? 7. This strawberry is still green. 8. The withered leaf has fallen to the ground. 9. Can you see a bird in that tree? 10. Does your tooth still ache? 11. I held up my foot to the fire to warm it. 12. His child studies very well. 13. This man works at our office. 14. There is a new house in our street. 15. This story is very interesting. 16. I have hurt my foot. 17. The wolf has been shot. 18. He keeps his toy in a box. 19. Put this knife on that table.

### **12. Put the following sentences in the plural.**

1. This is a bird. 2. Is that also a bird? — No, it isn't. That is a cat. 3. Is that a good horse? — Yes, it is. 4. Is that cow big or small? — It is big. 5. This is an apple and that is a flower. 6. Where is the coin? It is in the box. 7. What colour is the box? — It is green. 8. What is it made of? — It is made of wood. 9. What is that man? — He is a clerk. 10. Is he in the office? — Yes, he is. 11. Is that woman a typist? — No, she isn't. — What is she? — She is a doctor. 12. Is his brother at home? — Yes, he is. 13. This house has a balcony looking out on the street. 14. The architecture of this building is quite modern. 15. This is a new district of St. Petersburg. 16. There is a shop, a cinema and a theatre in the new district. 17. He is a retired worker. 18. I am a doctor. 19. We hear the sounds of a child's voice. 20. She is a nice girl.

### **13. Put the following sentences in the plural.**

1. This is a bird. 2. Is that also a bird? — No, it isn't. That is a cat. 3. Is that a good horse? — Yes, it is. 4. Is that cow big or small? — It is big. 5. This is an apple and that is a flower. 6. Where is the coin? — It is in the box. 7. What colour is the box? — It is green. 8. What is it made of? — It is made of wood. 9. What is that man? — He is a clerk. 10. Is he in the office? — Yes, he is. 11. Is that woman a typist? — No, she isn't. — What is she? — She is a doctor. 12. Is

his brother at home? – Yes, he is. 13. This house has a balcony looking out on the street. 14. The architecture of this building is quite modern. 15. This is a new district of St. Petersburg. 16. There is a shop, a cinema and a theatre in the new district. 17. He is a retired worker. 18. I am a doctor. 19. We hear the sounds of a child's voice. 20. She is a nice girl.

**14. Rephrase the following sentences, using the possessive case.**

1. The ball of the dog. 2. The skateboard of that man. 3. The songs of the children. 4. The umbrella of my grandmother. 5. The room of my friend. 6. The questions of my son. 7. The wife of my brother. 8. The table of our teacher. 9. The poems of Pushkin. 10. The voice of this girl. 11. The new club of the workers. 12. The letter of Pete. 13. The car of my parents. 14. The life of this woman. 15. The handbags of these women. 16. The flat of my sister is large. 17. The children of my brother are at home. 18. The room of the boys is large. 19. The name of this girl is Jane. 20. The work of these students is interesting. 21. The computer of my son is modern. 22. He was a friend of my cousins.

**15. Rephrase the following word-combinations and sentences, using the possessive case.**

1. The room of my friend. 2. The questions of my son. 3. The wife of my brother. 4. The table of our teacher. 5. The poems of Pushkin. 6. The voice of this girl. 7. The new club of the workers. 8. The letter of Pete. 9. The car of my parents. 10. The life of this woman. 11. The handbags of these women. 12. The flat of my sister is large. 13. The children of my brother are at home. 14. The room of the boys is large. 15. The name of this girl is Jane. 16. The work of these students is interesting.

**16. Translate into English using the possessive case.**

1. Он показал мне письмо своей сестры. 2. Она взяла коньки своего брата. 3. Дайте мне тетради ваших учеников. 4. Принесите вещи детей. 5. Вчера дети нашли птичье гнездо. 6. Это семья моего друга. Отец моего друга инженер. Мать моего друга преподаватель. 7. Чья это сумка? – Это сумка Тома. 8. Чьи это словари? – Это словари студентов. 9. Вы видели книгу нашего учителя? 10. Мне нравится почерк этого мальчика. 11. Я слышу голос моей сестры. 12. Она открыла окно и услышала смех и крики детей. 13. Она поставила мокрые сапоги мальчиков к печке. 14. Это бабушкино кресло.

**17. Translate into English, using a noun in the genitive case where possible.**

1. Давид провел две недели в Ярмуте у мистера Пеготти. 2. Уезжая в Ярмут, мальчик ничего не знал о предполагаемом (intended) браке своей матери. 3. После путешествия, которое длилось несколько часов, Пеготти с Давидом прибыли в Ярмут. 4. Приближаясь к дому мистера Пеготти, Давид увидел детскую фигурку, стоявшую на пороге. 5. Дядя Хэма и Эмили усыновил их, когда они были детьми. 6. Пеготти с гордостью говорила о доброте своего брата. 7. Двухнедельное пребывание в Ярмуте доставило Давиду большое удовольствие. 8. В присутствии мужа миссис Копперфильд боялась приласкать своего сына. 9. После минутной нерешительности Давид подошел к миссис Копперфильд и поцеловал ее. 10. После смерти жены мистер Мердстон послал Давида в Лондон, где мальчик должен был работать в торговом доме (warehouse) Мердстона и Гринби.

**18. Rephrase the following word-combinations and sentences, using the possessive case.**

1. Глаза у кошки зеленые. 2. Игрушки детей в большом ящике. 3. День рождения моего отца в мае. 4. И что за совпадение! Это любимый торт и моей мамы. 5. Я люблю книги моего мужа. 6. Как зовут того молодого человека? 7. Он показал мне письмо своей сестры. 8. Она взяла коньки своего брата. 9. Дайте мне тетради ваших учеников. 10. Принесите вещи детей. 11. Вчера дети нашли птичье гнездо. 12. Это семья моего друга. Отец моего друга – инженер. Мать моего друга – преподаватель. 13. Чья это сумка? – Это сумка Тома. 14. Чьи это словари? – Это словари студентов. 15. Вы видели книгу нашего учителя? 16. Мне нравится почерк этого мальчика. 17. Я слышу голос моей сестры. 18. Она открыла окно и услышала смех и крики детей. 19. Она поставила мокрые сапоги мальчиков к печке. 20. Это бабушкино кресло. 21. Я считаю, что ответ этого студента отличный. 22. Мой муж много знает о романах (книгах) Агаты Кристи. 23. В воскресенье у Дианы был день рождения. 24. Вчера вечером мы смотрели телевизор в доме моего друга. 25. Собака Лизы прыгнула с нами в пруд.

## THE ARTICLE

---

### 1. Insert the article where necessary.

1. This is ... book. It is my ... book. 2. Is this your ... pencil? – No, it isn't my ... pencil, it is my sister's ... pencil. 3. I have ... sister. My ... sister is ... engineer. My sister's ... husband is ... doctor. 4. I have no ... handbag. 5. Is this ... watch? – No, it isn't ... watch, it's ... pen. 6. This ... pen is good, and that ... pen is bad. 7. I can see ... pencil on your ... table, but I can see no ... paper. 8. Give me ... chair, please. 9. They have ... dog and two ... cats. 10. I have ... spoon in my ... plate, but I have no ... soup in it.

### 2. Insert the article where necessary.

1. This is ... tree. ... tree is green. 2. I can see three ... boys. ... boys are playing. 3. I have ... bicycle. ... bicycle is black. My ... friend has no ... bicycle. 4. Our ... room is large. 5. We wrote ... dictation yesterday. ... dictation was long. 6. She has two ... daughters and one ... son. Her ... son is ... pupil. 7. My ... brother's ... friend has no ... dog. 8. This ... pencil is broken. Give me that ... pencil, please. 9. She has ... ball. ... ball is ... big. 10. I got ... letter from my ... friend yesterday. ... letter was interesting.

### 3. Insert the article where necessary.

1. This is ... pen. ... pen is red. 2. These are pencils. ... pencils are black. 3. This is ... soup. ... soup is tasty. 4. In the morning I eat ... sandwich and drink ... tea. 5. She gave me ... coffee and ... cake. ... coffee was hot. ... cake was tasty. 6. Do you like ... ice-cream? 7. I see ... book in your ... hand. Is ... book interesting? 8. She bought ... meat, ... butter and ... potatoes yesterday. She also bought ... cake. ... cake was very ... tasty. We ate ... cake with ... tea. 9. This is my ... table. On ... table I have ... book, two ... pencils, ... pen and ... paper. 10. This is ... bag. ... bag is brown. It is my sister's ... bag. And this is my ... bag. It is ... yellow.

### 4. Insert the article where necessary.

1. I have two ... sisters. My ... sisters are ... students. 2. We are at ... home. 3. My ... brother is not at ... home, he is at ... school. 4. My ... mother is at ... work. She is ... doctor. 5. I am not ... doctor. 6. I have no' ... sister. 7. He is not ... pilot. 8. I have thirty-two ... teeth. 9. He has ... child. 10. She has two ... children. Her children are at ... school. 11. Is your father at ... home? – No, he is at ... work. 12. Where is your ... brother? – He is at ... home.

### 5. Insert the article where necessary.

1. We have ... large ... family. 2. My granny often tells us ... long ... interesting .. stories. 3. My ... father is ... engineer. He works at ... factory. ... factory is large. 4. My ... mother is ... doctor. She works at ... large ... hospital. She is at ... work now. 5. My ... aunt is ... teacher. She works at ... school. ... school is good. My ... aunt is not at ... school now. She is at ... home. She is drinking ... tea and eating ... jam. ... jam is sweet. I am at ... home, too. I am drinking ... tea and eating ... sandwich. ... sandwich is tasty. 6. My sister is at ... school. She is ... pupil. 7. My cousin has ... big ... black ... cat. My cousin's ... cat has two ... kittens. ... milk, too. cat likes ... milk. ... kittens like

### 6. Insert the article where necessary.

1. I am ... engineer. 2. My ... son is ... pupil. 3. He is ... good ... pupil. 4. This is ... house. 5. This is my ... pencil. 6. You have some ... pencils, but I have no ... pencil. Give me ... pencil, please. 7. I like your ... beautiful ... flower. Give me ... flower, please. 8. My ... mother is at ... home. She is reading ... interesting ... book. 9. My ... father is not at ... home. He is at ... work. He is ... doctor. He is ... good ... doctor. He works at ... hospital. ... hospital is large.

### 7. Insert the article where necessary.

1. What's ... weather like today? – ... weather is fine. 2. ... sun is yellow. 3. ... sky is grey today. 4. ... earth is ... planet. 5. We had ... English lesson yesterday. ... teacher asked me many ... questions. ... questions were difficult. 4. Where is your ... brother? – He is at ... home. He is in his ... room. He is sitting at ... table. He is doing his ... homework. ... homework is difficult. 5. Our ... cat is sitting on ... sofa. 6. It is very dark in ... room. Turn on ... light, please. 7. Nick went into ... bathroom, turned on ... water and washed his ... hands.

### 8. Insert the article where necessary.

1. This is ... good ... book. Take ... book from ... table. Put this ... book into ... bookcase. 2. ... weather is fine today. ... sky is blue. ... sun is shining brightly in ... blue ... sky. 3. This is ... boy. ... boy is at... school. He is ... pupil. This ... boy is my ... brother's ... friend. He has ... cat, but he has no ... dog. He likes his ... cat. He gives ... cat ... milk every day. 4. Yesterday I received ... letter from my ... friend. ... letter was interesting. 5. We live in... big house. I like ... house very much. 6. Are you ... worker? – No, I am ... student.

**9. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Where is ... cat? – .. cat is on ... sofa. 2. Where is ... book? – .. book is on ... shelf. 3. Where are ... flowers? – ... flowers are in ... beautiful vase. 4. Where is.. vase? – ... vase is on ... little table near ... window. 5. Open ... win-dow, please. ... weather is fine today. I can see ... sun in ... sky. I can see ... nice little bird. ... bird is sitting in ... big tree. ... tree is green. 6. There is ... little white cloud in ... sky. 7. We have ... large room. There is ... big sofa in ... room and ... little lamp on ... wall over ... sofa. I like to sit on ... sofa and read ... good book.

**10. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Where is ... soup? – ... soup is in ... big saucepan on ... gas-cooker. 2. Where are ... cutlets? – ... cutlets are in ... refrigerator on ... little plate. 3. There is no ... bread on ... table. Where is ... bread? 4. There is ... little brown coffee-table in our ... room in ... front of ... sofa. 5. Where is ... table in your ... room? 6. There is ... thick carpet on ... floor in my mother's ... room. 7. Is your brother at ... home? – No, he is at ... work. He works at ... big factory. He is ... engineer. 8. My sister has many ... books. ... books are in ... big bookcase. 9. ... weather is fine today. Let's go and play in ... yard. There are many ... children in ... yard. They are playing with ... ball.

**11. Insert the article where necessary.**

1, We have ... big dog. ... dog is very clever. 2. My friend has ... very good computer. 3. This ... boy is big. He is ... student. 4. There is ... very big piano in ... hall. 5. This is ... tree and that is not ... tree. It's ... bush. 6. I am ... boy. I am ... pupil. I learn at ... school. 7. My sister is at ... work. She is ... secretary. She works at ... large office. 8. This is ... very difficult question. I don't know ... answer to it. 9. Do you see ... little girl with ... big ball in her ... hands? She is ... pupil of our ... school. 10. There was ... beautiful flower in this ... vase yesterday. Where is ... flower now?

**12. Insert the article where necessary.**

There is ... thick red ... carpet in my ... room. ... carpet is on ... floor in ... front of ... sofa. 2. Where is ... table in your brother's ... room? – His ... table is near ... window. 3. I can see ... fine ... vase on ... shelf. Is it your ... vase? 4. We have no ... piano in our ... living-room. 5. My ... uncle is ... married. He has ... beautiful wife. They have ... son, but they have no ... daughter. 6. I can see ... nice ... coffee-table in ... middle of ... room to ... right of ... door. It is ... black and ... red. I like ... coffee-table. 7. Our ... TV-set is on ... little ...

table in ... corner of ... room. 8. There is... beautiful picture in my father's ... study, ... picture is on ... wall to ... left of ... window.

**13. Insert the article where necessary.**

My aunt's flat is in ... new house. There is ... living-room, ... bedroom, ... study, ... bathroom and ... kitchen in ... flat. ... bedroom is ... large room with ... two windows. ... room is light as ... windows are large. There are ... white curtains on ... windows. There are ... two beds with ... large pillows on them. There are ... small tables near ... beds. There are ... lamps on them. To ... left of ... door there is ... dressing-table with ... looking-glass on it. There is ... low chair at ... dressing-table. There are ... several pictures on ... pale green walls. There is ... thick carpet on ... floor. ... carpet is dark green. ... room is very cosy.

**14. Insert the article where necessary.**

There is ... sofa in ... corner of ... room. 2. There are ... cushions on ... sofa, 3. There are ... books on ... shelf. Give me ... book, please. 4. Look into ... refrigerator. What can you see on ... shelves? – There is ... butter in ... butter-dish. There is ... sausage, but there is no ... cheese. There are ... eggs and ... apples. There is ... orange, ... lemon, and ... jam in ... little vase. 5. There is ... juice in this ... cup. May I drink ... juice? 6. There are ... girls in ... yard, but I can see no ... boys. Where are ... boys? – Oh, all ... boys are playing football at ... stadium.

**15. Insert the article where necessary.**

I have ... colour TV-set. ... TV-set is on ... little table in ... corner of ... room. 2. There is ... book, ... pen, and ... paper on my ... writing-desk. 3. My ... brother is ... teacher. He works at ... school. He has ... very good books. His ... books are in ... big bookcase. 4. There is ... tea in my ... glass. There is no ... tea in my ... friend's ... glass. His ... glass is empty. 5. Where is ... coffee-table in your ... room? – ... coffee-table is in ... front of ... sofa. There is ... cup on ... coffee-table and ... newspapers. There is ... coffee in ... cup.

**16. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. My ... friend has to get up early in ... morning because he goes to ... school. That's why he usually goes to ... bed early in ... evening. 2. ... weather was very bad in ... morning yesterday. ... sky was grey and it was raining. But in ... middle of ... day ... weather began to change. ... rain stopped and ... sun appeared from behind ... clouds. In ... afternoon it was

very warm. I did not want to stay at ... home and went into ... yard. There were ... boys and ... girls in ... yard. We played in ... yard till late in ... evening. When I came ... home, I drank ... tea, ate ... sandwich and went to ... bed at once. I slept very well at ... night.

**17. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. My brother is ... pupil. He goes to ... school. He goes to ... school in ... morning. He has five or six ... lessons every day. In ... afternoon he goes ... home. At ... home he does his ... homework. In ... evening he reads ... books. He usually goes to ... bed at ... half past ten. At ... night he sleeps. 2. My father goes to ... work in ... morning and comes ... home in ... evening. 3. I get up at ... half past seven in ... morning and go to ... bed at ... quarter to eleven in ... evening. 4. When does your mother leave ... home for ... work? – She leaves ... home for ... work at ... quarter past eight. 5. When do you leave ... home for ... school? – I leave ... home for ... school at ... half past ... eight.

**18. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. There are three rooms and ... kitchen in our new flat. 2. My new dress is made of ... silk. 3. If you want to write something on ... blackboard, you must have ... piece of ... chalk. 4. Are there any pupils in ... classroom? 5. I have ... new English book. ... book is very interesting. 6. There is ... garden in ... front of our school. ... garden is not large, but it is very nice. 7. ... May is ... fifth month of the year. 8. ... Saturday is ... sixth day of the week. 9. ... Sunday is ... day off.

**19. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. My friends live in ... small town. It is ... new town. ... streets in ... town are broad and straight. There are ... beautiful buildings in them. ... town is very green, and so ... air is fresh. There are ... beautiful parks and gardens in ... town. ... people like to go there after ... work. In ... evening you can hear ... sounds of ... music from ... parks. There are ... schools, ... libraries, ... hospital, ... theatre, ... cinemas, ... polyclinics and ... kindergartens in ... town. 2. This is ... classroom. ... classroom is large and light. 3. There is ... picture on ... wall. 4. What is ... date today? It is ... seventh of ... December. 5. ... third lesson today is ... lesson of English. 6. Pete, go to ... blackboard. 7. After school I usually go ... home. 8. My father always comes from ... work late: at eight o'clock or at ... half past eight. But on ... Friday he comes ... home early: at half past four or at ... quarter to five. On ... Saturday and on ... Sunday he does not go to ... work.

**20. Insert the article where necessary.**

I go to ... school in ... morning, so I get up early. I usually get up at ... quarter past seven. I go to ... bathroom, turn on ... water and wash my face and hands. My father and mother also get up early in ... morning. My mother works at ... office. She is ... typist. My father is ... doctor. He works at ... polyclinic. We have ... breakfast in ... kitchen. We eat... porridge and ... eggs. We drink ... tea. My father and mother leave ... home for ... work at ... half past eight. My father goes to ..\ polyclinic, and my mother goes to ... office. I don't leave ... home with my parents: ... school where I learn is near our house. I leave ... home for ... school at ... quarter to nine. My granny stays at ... home and cooks ... dinner. I have ... lunch at ... school after ... third lesson. My father and mother have ... lunch at ... work. When we come ... home, we have ... dinner.

**21. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Every day my husband goes to ... work, my son goes to ... school and I go to ... institute. 2. There is ... new school at... corner of our street. 3. My daughter came ... home from ... school on ... Monday and said to me: "There will be ... parents' meeting on ... tenth of February at six o'clock in ... evening." 4. ... teacher told us ... very interesting story at ... lesson. 5. When ... bell rang, ... pupils went into ... classroom. 6. We are usually at ... school from nine o'clock in ... morning till two o'clock in ... afternoon. 7. We don't go to ... school on ... Sunday.

**22. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. What do you do after ... breakfast? – After ... breakfast I go to ... school. 2. My granny likes to read ... book after ... lunch. 3. ... people usually have ... breakfast in ... morning. They have) ... dinner in... afternoon. In ... evening ... people have ... supper. 4. There is a proverb: "After ... dinner sleep awhile, after ... supper walk ... mile. 5. Who cooks ... dinner in your family? 6. Yesterday lather told us ... very interesting story at ... breakfast. 7. What did you have for ... lunch at... school on ... Wednesday? – We had ... salad and ... tea. 8. My mother never has ... supper with ... family because she does not like to eat in ... evening. 9. When do you clean your teeth in ... morning: before ... breakfast or after ... breakfast?

**23. Insert the article where necessary.**

For ... breakfast I have ... coffee with ... milk and ... sugar. I have ... jam, too. There are ... different things on ... dinner-table. There is ... bread, ...

butter and ... ham. There are ... cups and ... glasses there. There is ... jug on ... table. ... milk in ... jug is hot. There is ... tea-pot on ... table. There is ... tea in ... tea-pot. ... tea is hot, too. There are ... plates, ... forks and ... knives on ... table. 2. ... lamp is on ... table. 3. There is ... lamp on ... table. 4. Is there ... lamp on ... table? 5. Is ... lamp on ... table? 6. Is there ... clock on ... wall? 7. There are two ... shelves on ... wall. 8. Where are ... shelves? – ... shelves are on ... wall. 9. They have ... large flat. There are ... four rooms in ... flat. 10. Is ... newspaper on ... table? 11. Is there ... newspaper on ... table? 12. There is ... butter on ... plate. 13. Where is ... butter? ... butter is on ... little plate. 14. There is ... white and ... brown bread on ... table.

#### **24. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. My ... aunt and my ... uncle are ... doctors. They work at ... hospital. They get up at seven o'clock in ... morning. They go to ... bed at eleven o'clock. 2. I work in ... morning and in ... afternoon. I don't work in ... evening. I sleep at ... night. 3. When do you leave ... home for ... school? – I leave ... home at ... quarter past eight in ... morning. 4. What does your mother do after ... breakfast? – She goes to ... work. 5. Is there ... sofa in your ... living-room? – Yes, there is ... cosy little ... sofa in ... living-room. – Where is ... sofa? – It is in ... corner of ... room to ... left of ... door. I like to sit on this ... sofa in ... front of ... TV-set in ... evening. 6. There is ... nice coffee-table near ... window. There are ... newspapers on ... coffee-table. 7. There is ... tea in ... glass. 8. When do you watch ... TV? – I watch TV in ... evening. We have ... large colour TV-set in our ... room. There is ... beautiful vase on ... TV-set. There are ... flowers in ... vase. 9. I have ... large writing-desk in ... study. There is ... paper on ... writing-desk. My ... books and ... exercise-books are on ... writing-desk, too.

#### **25. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Pete has ... small family. He has ... father and ... mother. He has no ... brother, but he has ... sister. His sister is ... pupil. She is ... good girl. She has ... many Russian books, but she has no ... English books. 2. There is ... writing-desk in ... room. ... writing-desk is good. There is ... lamp on ... writing desk. 3. My uncle has ... large family. They are six in ... family. 4. My father is ... engineer. He works at ... big factory. 5. We have ... good library. Our books are in ... big bookcase. 6. Is your sister ... married? 7. What do you do after ... breakfast? – I go to ... school. 8. When do you come ... home? – I come ... home at ... half past two. 9. DoyouliketowatchTVin ... evening?

**26. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. What ... colour is your new ... hat? – It's ... red. 2. Is there ... refrigerator in your ... kitchen? 3. Where is ... refrigerator in your ... kitchen? – It is in ... corner of ... kitchen. 4. There are ... flowers in our ... living-room. ... flowers are in ... beautiful vase. 5. I have ... tea in my ... cup. 6. He has no ... coffee in his ... cup. 7. What ... book did you take from ... library on ... Tuesday? 8. I have ... books, ... exercise-books and ... pens in my ... bag. 9. I am ... engineer. I work at ... office. I go to ... office in ... morning. As ... office is far from ... house I live in, I take ... bus to get there. 10. What ... bus do you take to get to ... work? 11. Whose ... pen is this?

**27. Insert the article where necessary.**

My friend's ... flat is very comfortable. There are ... three rooms in ... flat: ... living-room, ... study and ... bedroom. ... living-room is not very large. ... walls in ... living-room are blue. There are ... pictures on ... walls. There is ... table in ... middle of ... room with some chairs around it. To ... left of ... door there is ... sofa. Near ... sofa there are ... two large armchairs. They are very comfortable. There is ... piano in my friend's living-room. ... piano is to ... right of ... door. ... bedroom and ... study are small. ... furniture in ... flat is brown.

**28. Insert the article where necessary.**

Here is ... large window. Through ... window we can see ... room. Opposite ... window there is ... door. On ... door there is ... curtain. In ... corner of ... room there is ... round table. On it we can see ... books and ... telephone. There is ... bookshelf over ... table. On ... bookshelf we can see ... newspapers and ... book by ... Jack London. There are ... two ... pictures in ... room. One ... picture is small, ... oilier picture is very large. There are ... two bookcases in ... room. ... bookcases are full of ... books. There is ... large sofa in ... room. On ... sofa we can see ... bag. Whose ... bag is that? There is no ... bed in ... room. On ... small table near ... window there are ... flowers and ... glass of ... water. In ... front of ... window we can see ... armchair.

**29. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. When my grandfather was ... young man, he studied ... physics. 2. Do you speak ... Spanish? 3. My uncle is ... great specialist in ... biology. 4. ... Japanese is more difficult than ... French. 5. We listened to ... very interesting lecture on ... English literature yesterday. 6. Yesterday at ... lesson of ... geography ... teacher told us ... very interesting things about ... famous

travellers. 7. My father speaks ... English and ... French, but he does not speak ... German. 8. We had ... lesson of ... mathematics yesterday. We wrote ... test-paper in ... mathematics. ... teacher said: "I shall correct... test-papers in ... evening. Tomorrow you will know ... results".

**30. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. I study ... English. I attend ... English classes in ... evening. On ... days when I have no ... classes, I stay at ... home and do some work about ... house. I have ... dinner with my ... family. After ... dinner I talk to ... members of my ... family, watch ... TV and read ... books, ... newspapers and ... magazines. I go to ... bed late at ... night. 2. I am thirsty. Give me ... water, please. 3. There is ... book on ... table. Give me ... book, please.

**31. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Do you play ... piano? 2. There is ... big black piano in our living-room. It is at ... wall to ... left of ... door opposite ... sideboard. My mother likes to play ... piano. She often plays ... piano in ... evening. 3. ... boys like to play ... football. 4. What do you do in ... evening? – I often play ... chess with my grandfather. 5. Where are ... children? – Oh, they are out of ... doors. ... weather is fine today. They are playing ... badminton in ... yard. 6. What ... games does your sister like to play? – She likes to play ... tennis. 7. Do you like to play ... guitar? 8. What ... colour is your guitar?

**32. Insert the article where necessary.**

When we want to write ... letter, we take ... piece of ... paper and ... pen. We first write our-... address and ... date in ... right-hand corner. Then on ... left-hand side we write ... greeting. We may write, for instance, "My dear brother," "Dear Henry," etc., and then on ... next line we begin ... real letter. We must not forget to leave ... margin on ... left-hand side of ... page. At ... end of ... letter we write "Yours," and then we sign our name. We put ... letter into ... envelope and close ... envelope. On ... envelope we write ... name and address of ... person who will receive it. We stick ... stamp in ... top right-hand corner, and then we post ... letter.

**33. Insert the article where necessary.**

It was... hot day. ... sun was shining brightly in ...blue sky. ... wolf and ... lamb met at ... stream. ... water in ... stream was cool and clear. ... wolf saw that ... lamb was fat and wanted to eat it. He began to shout: "You, ... fool, you are making ... water dirty!" ... lamb was afraid. It looked at ... wolf and

said in ... thin voice: "But, ... Mr. Wolf, I cannot make ... water dirty for you from ... place where I am standing, because ... stream runs from you to me." "Stop talking!" shouted ... wolf in ... angry voice. "I know you! I met you six months ago, and you were very rude to me." "You are wrong, ... Mr. Wolf," cried ... lamb, "you could not meet me six months ago: I am only four ... months old." "Never mind," said ... wolf, "if it wasn't you, it was your brother." And with

### **34. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Bill Robins was ... very rich man. He was ... richest man in ... village.  
 2. Pete is ... tallest boy in our class. Nick is ... shortest boy, but he is very ... strong. He is ... stronger than many boys who are ... taller than he. I think Nick is ... strongest boy in ... class.  
 3. Granny often tells us ... long stories. Today her story was still... longer. It was ... longest story. She began telling it after ... dinner and finished only before ... supper. But ... story was very interesting. I think it was ... most interesting of Granny's stories.  
 4. Which was ... most difficult exercise in ... test-paper?  
 5. Which is ... best season of the year?  
 6. February is ... shortest month of the year.  
 7. Do you know ... longest river in our country?  
 8. In ... May ... days are ... longer than in ... April.

### **35. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Moscow is situated on ... Moscow River. ... Moscow is a river that moves very slowly. There is ... canal called ... Moscow-Volga Canal, which joins ... Moscow to ..., Volga. ... Volga runs into ... Caspian Sea.  
 2. Several rivers run into ... sea at... New York. ... most important is ... Hudson River which empties into ... Atlantic Ocean. Besides ... Hudson there are ... two other rivers: ... East River and ... Harlem River.  
 3. In ... Siberia there are many long rivers: ... Ob, ... Irtysh, ... Yenissei, ... Lena and ... Amur.  
 4. ... Altai Mountains are ... higher than ... Urals.

### **36. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. ... Neva flows into ... Gulf of ... Finland.  
 2. ... Pacific Ocean is very deep.  
 3. ... Urals are not very high.  
 4. ... Kazbek is ... highest peak of ... Caucasus.  
 5. ... Alps are covered with ... snow.  
 6. ... Shetland Islands are situated to ... north of ... Great Britain.  
 7. ... USA is ... largest country in ... America.  
 8. ... Crimea is washed by ... Black Sea.  
 9. ... Lake Baikal is ... deepest lake in ... world.  
 10. ... Paris is ... capital of ... France.  
 11. Lomonosov was born in ... small village on ... shore of ... White Sea.  
 12. Gogol was born in ... Ukraine in 1809.  
 13. ... Caucasus separates ... Black Sea from ... Caspian Sea.  
 14. ...

Europe and ... America are separated by ... Atlantic Ocean. 15. ... Baltic Sea is stormy in winter. 16. There are many small islands in ... Pacific Ocean. 17. ... North Sea separates ... British Isles from ... Europe. 18. ... Balkans are old mountains. 19. ... Nile flows across ... north-eastern part of ... Africa to ... Mediterranean Sea. 20. Which are ... highest mountains in ... Russia?

**37. Insert the article where necessary.**

... Thames is ... short river. 2. ... Russia is washed by ... Arctic Ocean in ... north. 3. Kiev is to ... south of ... Moscow. 4. ... Europe is ... continent. 5. ... Moscow is ... capital of ... Russia. 6. Is ... Asia ... island or ... continent? 7. ... Black Sea is in ... south of our country. 8. ... White Sea is in ... north of our country, 9. This is ... map of ... world. What can you see on ... map? What ... colour are ... valleys on ... map? 10. Petrov is ... architect. He is ... experienced architect. He is in ... Far East. He has ... wife. His wife is ... typist. They have ... son and ... daughter. 11. ... Philippines are situated to ... south-east of ... Asia.

**38. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. This is ... pen. It is ... good pen. ... pen is black. It is on ... table. 2. I have got ... dog. ... dog's name is Spot. He is ... big grey dog. ... dog is very strong. 3. My friend has ... sister. Her name is Ann. ... girl is ... pupil. 4. We have ... picture in ... living-room. ... picture is very good. It is on ... wall. 5. ... Irish Sea is between ... Great Britain and ... Ireland. 6. There is ... map on ... wall of ... classroom. It is ... map of ... world. There are many seas and lakes on ... map. This is ... Mediterranean Sea and that is ... Red Sea. These are ... Himalayas. They are ... highest mountains in ... world. 7. We live in ... St. Petersburg. ... St. Petersburg is ... very large city. It is one of ... largest cities in ... Russia. 8. My brother is ... doctor. His flat is in ... centre of ... city. It is in ... new house. There are three rooms in ... flat. ... living-room is ... largest of all. It is ... nice light room. There are ... pictures on ... walls. There is ... round table in ... middle of ... room. There is ... sofa at ... wall with ... large thick carpet in ... front of it. ... study and ... bedroom are small, but very comfortable.

**39. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. ... Russia occupies ... eastern half of ... Europe and ... northern third of ... Asia. 2. ... climate of ... northern part of ... Russia is severe. 3. This winter is ... true Russian winter with ... hard frosts. 4. It is warm in ... Crimea and ... Caucasus. 5. ... Washington is ... capital of ... United States of America. 6. I

want to go to ... New York some day. 7. ... best way to know and understand ... people of ... other countries is to meet them in their own homes. 8. Is ... Australia ... island or ... continent? 9. ... Red Sea is between ... Africa and ... Asia. 10. There are six continents in ... world, 11. ... France is to ... north of ... Italy.

#### **40. Insert the article where necessary.**

1. Did you have ... good time in the country? – Oh yes. ... weather was fine. We were out of ... doors from ... morning till ... night. We played ... football, ... volley-ball and ... other games. We came ... home late at ... night and went to ... bed at once. 2. Look at ... clock! It is ... quarter past ten. Go to ... bed at once. 3. ... sun rises in ... east and sets in ... west. 4. We spent last summer in ... Ukraine, in ... little village on ... bank of ... big river with ... very warm water. There was ... wood on ... other side of ... river. We often went to ... wood and gathered ... lot of ... mushrooms. 5. My friend likes to play ... chess. He is ready to play ... chess all ... day long. He is ... best chess player in our school.

#### **41. Insert the article where necessary.**

... Russia is such ... large country that when it is night in one part of ... country, it is day in another part, when it is winter in one part of ... country, it is already summer in another. Imagine it is ... beginning of ... May now. It is spring in ... St. Petersburg. ... weather is fine. It is still cool at ... night, but it is quite warm in ... afternoon. It sometimes rains, but... rain is warm, too. ... ground is covered with ... soft green grass, and ... trees are covered with ... green leaves. But while it is spring in St. Petersburg, it is still winter in ... north of our country at ... beginning of ... May, Here it is cold and sometimes frosty, ... rivers and ... seas are covered with ... ice. ... ice does not melt in some places even in summer. ... ground is covered with ... deep snow. In ... south of our country ... weather is quite different. It is already summer in ... Caucasus and in ... Crimea. It is much warmer than in St. Petersburg. It is sometimes even hot. ... sky is usually cloudless and it seldom rains here. People wear ... summer clothes.

## THE ADJECTIVE

---

### 1. Find and underline adjectives in the text. Translate.

My favourite painting is in a light oval room with large windows. It was painted by a famous Italian artist. An elegant lady rides a black horse in a beautiful park. Three small funny dogs are running behind them. The woman looks happy and excited. I feel quite warm and comfortable when I look at this old painting.

### 2. Put appropriate adjectives in sentences. Translate the sentences.

Valuable (ценный) – delicious (вкусный) – English (английский) – leather (кожаный) – Russian (русский) – tired (уставший) – careful (осторожный) – free (свободный) – cotton (хлопковый) – good (хороший) – cold (холодный)

1. Novgorod is a ... city.
2. Please be ... with a knife.
3. Sherlock Holmes was an ... detective.
4. Good bye! Have a ... time in Mexico.
5. I like going shopping in my ... time.
6. Don't leave ... things in your bags.
7. I'm going to bed. I'm so ...
8. These peaches are very ...
9. Will you close the window? I feel ...
10. I'm looking for a white ... dress and a pair of red ... shoes.

### 3. Place the adjectives in the sentence in the correct order.

- a) I have a ..... dog. /and white, beautiful, big, tan /
- b) We bought a ..... table. / glass nice /
- c) This is a ..... book. / fascinating little/
- d) We saw an ..... movie on animals. / interesting new/
- e) She is a looking for ..... bag. / black leather stylish/
- f) There are some ..... students in the class. /America nnew/
- g) It was a day. / cold beautiful/

### 4. Which of these options is correct and which is not?

- A blue big box.
- A blue red box.
- A large and white house.

A white and large house.  
 A silk new comfortable dress.  
 A comfortable new silk dress.  
 A kind old woman.  
 An old kind woman.  
 A sunny lovely day.  
 A lovely sunny day.  
 A delicious Russian meal.  
 A Russian delicious meal.  
 An old brick big house.  
 A big old brick house.  
 Beautiful little flowers.  
 Little beautiful flowers.  
 A brown round kitchen table.  
 A kitchen brown round table.  
 A cute Russian young girl.  
 A Russian young cute girl.

### 5. Select the appropriate adjective in parentheses.

*E.g.: The ghost was ... (frightening/frightened). (Привидение было страшным). – The ghost was frightening.*

1. Our trip will be ... (tiring/tired). (Наша поездка будет утомительной).
2. He always feels ... (boring/bored) during his vacation. (Ему всегда скучно на каникулах).
3. I really enjoyed a ... (relaxing/relaxed) walk near the sea. (Мне очень понравилась расслабляющая прогулка у моря).
4. John was ... (disappointing/disappointed) by the results of his exams. (Джон был расстроен результатами своих экзаменов.)
5. I'm leaving for Milan tomorrow and I am ... (exciting/excited). (Я уезжаю завтра в Милан, и я взволнована).
6. My Dad is ... (interesting/interested) in politics. (Мой отец интересуется политикой).
7. I got lost in the city because the map was ... (confusing/confused). (Я потерялся в городе, потому что карта была запутанной).
8. Ann is ... (surprising/surprised) by the news. (Аня удивлена новостям).
9. Your reasons are not ... (convincing/convincing) for me. (Твои доводы неубедительны для меня).
10. They looked ... (amusing/amused) by the presents. (Они были приятно удивлены подарками).

### 6. Put sentences with appropriate phrases with adjectives.

*E.g.: His car is ... – His car is as slow as a turtle.*

As slow as a turtle (медленный как черепаха) – as pretty as a rose (красивый как роза) – as high as a mountain (высокий как гора) – as white as snow (белый как снег) – as hot as fire (горячий как огонь) – as pale as the moon (бледный как луна) – as brave as a lion (отважный как лев) – as clear as a bell (чистый как колокольчик) – as blue as the sky (синий как небо) – as busy as a bee (занятой как пчела) – as clumsy as a bear (неуклюжий как медведь) – as strong as steel (крепкий как сталь) – as light as a feather (легкий как пушинка) – as free as a bird (свободный как птица) – as true as a dog (верный как пес) – as cold as ice (холодный как лед)

1. My friends are ...
2. Those buildings are ...
3. Her voice is ...
4. She has got 5 children and she is always ...
5. You look ill, your face is ...
6. Put on your coat. Your hands are ...
7. Her teeth are ...
8. Bob is a real man. He is ... and his character is ...
9. Their daughter looks like an angel, she is ...
10. What colour are her eyes? – They are ...
11. You have broken my chair. You are ...
12. I can't stand on the sand. It's ...
13. When I am in love I feel ...
14. At the top of the mountain I started feeling ...

### COMPARISONS OF ADJUSTMENTS

#### 7. Put the adjectives in the correct form.

1. Младший 2. ярче 3. больше 4. зажигалка 5. больше 6. Еще 7. самый высокий 8. старшая 9. старше 10. Лучший 11. самый большой 12. самый старший

#### 8. Choose the right word.

1. The 1-st of September isn't the\_(longest/ long) day.
2. The mouse is\_\_(smaller/ smallest) than the cat.
3. It is a very\_(funniest/ funny) English book.
4. He is a\_(nicest/ nice) boy.
5. My hands are \_(cleaner/ clean) than your hands.

6. Russia is the\_(larger/ largest) country.
7. In the city the rivers are\_(dirtier/ dirty) than in the country.
8. Ted is the\_(worse/ worst) pupil in our class.

II. Переведи и запиши пропущенные слова.

1. Miss Chatter is\_(выше) than Mary.
2. Tim is \_(умнее) than Tom.
3. In the country rivers are\_(чище) than in the city.
4. Moscow isn't the \_(самый большой) city.
5. He is the \_(лучший) teacher in my school.
6. It is the \_(самый холодный) day today.
7. John is a\_(хуже) singer than me.
8. This is the \_(самая смешная) story I know,

**9. Pick up the answers to the questions and write them down.**

Winter. Grass. A giraffe. Russia. Fish. Dolphins.

Whales. February. A pig. A camel.

1. What is the farm animal?
2. What is the tallest animal in the world?
3. What is the coldest season in a year?
4. What do horses eat?
5. What animals live in the sea?
6. What is the shortest month of the year?
7. What is the largest country in the world?
8. What animal can carry things?

**10. Open the brackets by putting the adjective in the desired form.**

1. The ocean is \_\_\_ than the sea. (large)
2. I think this book is \_\_\_ than your book (interesting)
3. My brother is the \_\_\_ pupil in his class (good)
4. I think monkeys are \_\_\_ animals the in the Zoo. (funny)
5. Ann is the \_\_\_ girl in class. (beautiful)
6. Camels are \_\_\_ than horses. (strong)

**11. Put the suffix -er or -ier.**

- 1) Parrots are small... than hens.
- 2) Monkey's tail is long... than pig's tail.
- 3) Cows are fat... than horses.
- 4) Granny is short ... than Grandpa.

- 5) Apples are tasty... than carrots.
- 6) Elephants are the ... bigg ... animals.
- 7) My brother is old... than me.
- 8) Monkey are the clever... animals.
- 9) Cliff is the strong... boy in our class.
- 10) Giraffe's neck is the long ....

**12. Put the adjectives proposed in brackets in the appropriate form (degree of comparison) and complete the sentences.**

1. Mary is (young) than her sister Jane. – Мэри младше, чем ее сестра Джейн. 2. Barbara is (young) of four sisters. – Барбара – самая младшая из четырех сестер. 3. John is (clever) than his friend Bob. – Джон умнее своего друга Боба. 4. Richard is (clever) boy in this group. – Ричард – самый умный мальчик в этой группе. 5. Sirius is (bright) than the polar star. – Сириус ярче полярной звезды. 6. The polar star is (bright) star in the north hemisphere. – Полярная звезда является самой яркой звездой в северном полушарии. 7. The bedroom is (dark) than the kitchen. – Спальня темнее кухни. 8. The wallpapers in the hall are (dark) ones in our flat. – Обои в прихожей самые темные в нашей квартире. 9. Your answer was (unusual) than the answer of her son. – Твой ответ был более необычным, чем ответ ее сына. 10. Elisabeth suggested (unusual) way out. – Элизабет предложила наиболее необычный (самый необычный) выход из ситуации.

**13. Choose the correct adjective in parentheses.**

1. Nick is (happier, the happiest) boy that I know. – Ник – самый счастливый мальчик, которого я знаю.
2. Of the six cars, I like the silver one (better, best). – Из шести машин мне нравится серебристая больше всего.
3. Jane's notebook is (cheaper, the cheapest) than mine. – Ноутбук Джейн дешевле, чем мой.
4. This is (more delicious, the most delicious) cheesecake I have ever had! – Это самый вкусный чизкейк, который я пробовала!
5. This bookcase is (more beautiful, the most beautiful) than that one. – Этот книжный шкаф красивее, чем тот.
6. Do you feel (better, the best) today than yesterday? – Ты чувствуешь себя лучше сегодня, чем вчера?
7. I think my cat is (prettier, the prettiest) of all the cats in the world. – Думаю, что моя кошка – самая красивая кошка в мире.

8. Steve Jobs is (more famous, famouser) than Stephen Wozniak. – Стив Джобс более известен, чем Стивен Возняк.

9. This week the weather is (hotter, more hot) than last week. – На этой неделе погода жарче, чем на прошлой неделе.

10. Our new house is (more expensive, expensiver) than the old one. – Наш новый дом дороже, чем старый.

11. Girls are usually (cleaner, more clean) than boys. – Девочки обычно более чистые, чем мальчики.

12. Chemistry was (harder, the hardest) subject at school. – Химия была самым трудным предметом в школе.

#### **14. Give the degree of comparison of adjectives.**

*E.g.: wet – wetter – the wettest*

*expensive – more expensive – the most expensive*

1. big (большой) 2. clever (умный) 3. good (хороший) 4. pleasant (приятный) 5. poor (бедный) 6. bad (плохой) 7. funny (смешной) 8. important (важный) 9. sunny (солнечный) 10. far (далекий) 11. comfortable (удобный) 12. wise (мудрый).

#### **15. Insert the proposed adjectives in the appropriate form (degree of comparison).**

1. My hat is (grey), but your cap is (grey). – Моя шляпа серая, но твоя кепка более серая.

2. This green tea is (hot), but that black tea is (hot). – Этот зеленый чай горячий, но тот черный чай горячее.

3. This book is (interesting), but that book is (interesting). – Эта книга интересная, но та книга еще интереснее.

4. This ball is (dirty), but that ball is (dirty). – Этот мяч грязный, но тот мяч еще грязнее.

5. This pig is very (fat), but the pig of our neighbor is (fat). – Эта свинья жирная, но свинья нашего соседа жирнее.

6. Our classroom is (large), but the aula is much (large). – Наша классная комната большая, но актовый зал намного больше.

7. His mother is (lucky), but his sister is (lucky). – Его мать счастлива, но его сестра счастливее.

8. Your car is (wellappointed), but my car is (wellappointed). – Твоя машина хорошо оборудована, но моя машина оборудована лучше.

**16. Make sentences from the given words and translate them.**

1. most – the Mona Lisa – in – is – painting – the – famous – the – world.
2. longer – the Don – is – the Volga – than.
3. more – Spain – Germany – than – beautiful – is.
4. London – city – in – biggest – the – England – is.
5. the – team – Adam – is – worst – the – player – in.

**17. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Сейчас Энн выглядит еще печальнее, чем утром. 2. Пятое мая был самым плохим днем в его жизни. 3. Я не могу быть счастливее. 4. Комната моего брата больше моей (комнаты). 5. Ваш сын – самый вежливый мальчик из всех, кого нам довелось увидеть. 6. Ты должен взять самую тяжелую сумку. 7. Питер – это мой старший брат. 8. Бабушка Джеймса старше его дедушки. 9 Твое кресло удобнее моего стула. 10. Он самый известный архитектор в нашем городе. 11. Где находится ближайшая автобусная остановка? 12. Этот журнал менее известный, чем "Ньюсуик". 13. Диаметр Земли больше диаметра Луны. 14. Этот рабочий более занятой, чем тот. 15. Твой кот жирнее моей собаки. 16. Его дом – самый красивый дом в поселке. 17. Твои волосы хороши, но ее волосы лучше. 18. Джон самый маленький (по росту) в их классе. 19. Климат здесь мягче. 20. Это самый короткий путь до нашего бассейна.

## THE PRONOUN

---

**1. Personal pronouns (I, he, them, you ...)**

(He, she, it) is a flower. My granny lives in a country. I go to (her, she, them) on holidays. My parents are doctors. (He, they, them) work in a hospital. (She, I, he) love my mom. I have a brother. Sometimes I ask (her, he, him) to help me. (Them, they, it) are going to school at the moment. (He, she, you) study very well.

**2. Possessive pronouns (ours, yours, yours, mine ...)**

My dad has a car. (Her, he, his) car is red. (Their, them, they) house is quite big. I have a boat. The boat is (my, mine, their). I like (your, him, it) answer more than (me, its, theirs). (My, mine, your) dog wails (his, her, its)

tail when I come from school. We live in a small town. (Our, his, ours) town is very nice. She wears (their, her, his) dress to school every day.

### 3. Demonstrative pronouns (this, those, these ...)

(That, this) is our house and (that, this) is theirs. (This, these) are books. (This, these) is a red ball and (this, that) is a yellow ball. (That, these) is a cat and (those, this) are mice. I like (this, these) flowers! (That, those) pictures are very beautiful. They live in (these, this) country.

### 4. Reflexive pronouns (yourself, yourself, yourself ...)

I do my homework all by (himself, herself, myself). They plan their vacation (ourselves, myself, themselves). We are going to the sea (themselves, himself, ourselves). My dad built this house (himself, herself, ourselves). This dog found (herself, himself, itself) a place under the bench. Yesterday she had a birthday. She bought (herself, itself, ourselves) earrings as a present. You should plan your life (yourself, himself, yourselves).

### 5. Mix

(He, I, me) have got a friend. (Her, his, him) name is Pete. (We, he, I) love travelling to different countries (himself, ourselves, itself). (They, he, it) go to school. (Him, her, their) school is near (me, mine, myself). (These, this) is a box. (It, she, he) is (ourselves, mine, her) present. Where did (you, his, it) buy (that, this, those) shoes? (It, this, these) ball is (he, his, myself) and (they, these, this) are (theirs, her, its). (This, he, these) is (him, ours, our) house. (He, we, they) built (him, her, it) (them, ourselves, their)

### 6. Insert relevant personal pronouns.

1. Ben is a little boy. ... is six.
2. Jane is a house-wife (домохозяйка). ... is lazy (ленивая).
3. Max is a soldier. ... is brave.
4. Lily is a young woman. ... is very beautiful.
5. Alice is late. ... is in a traffic jam (в дорожной пробке).
6. Nick and Ann are far from Moscow. ... are on a farm.
7. This is Ben's room. ... is nice.
8. These are new books. ... are interesting.
9. This is Elsa. ... is a student.
10. Nick and Max are students. ... are students of a Moscow university.
11. The rooms are small but ... are light and warm.

12. The new flat is comfortable but ... is far from the university.
13. Jack has many French books. ... likes to read French very much.
14. Hans is a new student. ... is German.
15. Alice and Jane are new secretaries. ... are not lazy.

**7. Insert relevant personal pronouns in the proposed answers to the questions.**

1. Is your house new? – Yes, ... is.
2. Are the students at the English lesson now? – Yes, ... are.
3. Is your university in Green Street? – Yes, ... is.
4. Are Helen and Bess your sisters? – Yes, ... are.
5. Is Ben's sister an engineer? – Yes, ... is.
6. Are the pencils red? – No, ... are not.
7. Is this room comfortable? – No, ... isn't.
8. Are the textbooks on the shelf? – Yes, ... are.
9. Does the girl often visit the museum? – No, ... doesn't.
10. Does this pen write well? – Yes, ... does.
11. Is Ben on holiday now? – No, ... isn't.
12. Is Helen nice? – Yes, ... is.
13. Are you an engineer? – Yes, ... am.

**8. Replace the highlighted words with personal pronouns in the object case.**

1. I like Nick.
2. We like Bess.
3. He likes ice-cream.
4. Can you show the pictures to Ben?
5. You can tell Helen my e-mail address.
6. Are you interested in football?
7. I want to buy two bottles of milk for Bess.
8. Do you want to play tennis with Ben?
9. We must speak to Nick.
10. You should invite Helen and Bess to your house for dinner.
11. Do you know Mary?
12. Tell Nick about your plan.
13. I see my friends every day.

**9. Replace the highlighted words with personal pronouns in the object case.**

1. Where is Nick? I want to play tennis with ... .

2. Bess is here. Do you want to speak to ... ?
3. My sister speaks French. She learns ... at school.
4. Look at that man. Do you know ... ?
5. Do you want to read this newspaper? I can give ... to ... .
6. If you see Ben and Bess, please, don't tell ... anything.
7. We want to phone Helen and invite ... to the party.

**10. Replace the highlighted words with personal pronouns in the nominative or object case.**

1. The vase is on the table.
2. Mother often sends Ben to buy milk.
3. Are Bess and Helen ready to do the work?
4. Nick and Ben spend their holidays at the seaside.
5. The man is in the park.
6. The managers are not at work now.
7. Helen and I are good friends.
8. Is Ben at the lesson now?
9. Where is the calculator?
10. The newspapers are on the table.
11. The child is in the garden with his mother.
12. Our parents are always glad to see us.
13. My brother and I are good football players.
14. Bess knows Ben.
15. I see the picture very well.
16. The students have lectures every day.
17. The boy plays football every Sunday.
18. The teacher asks the students.
19. The students write tests every week.
20. Look at the picture!
21. I have the book at home.
22. Max wants to speak to Helen.

**11. Replace the highlighted words with possessive pronouns.**

1. This is Ben's room.
2. This is Helen's hat.
3. Here is my parents' house.
4. Nick's mother is an economist.
5. Where is my brother's bag?
6. I like Helen's car.

7. Ann's books are on the table.
- 8 This student's sister is my friend.
9. My sister's house is not far from Ben's house.
10. Where is the children's room?
11. Ann's brothers study at the university.
12. These boys' fathers don't work at the factory.
13. Here is my sister's flat.

**12. Insert possessive pronouns.**

1. Is your bag new? – Yes, ... bag is new .
2. I like ... hat, Ann.
3. Don't plant this tree! ... branch is broken.
4. Max, you have a new job. Do you like ... new job?
5. ... friends always tell me everything.
6. Our dog likes to run after ... tail.

**13. Modify the following sentences according to the model, using the absolute form of possessive pronouns.**

*Model: This car is my car. – This car is mine.*

1. This calculator is my calculator.
2. Is this bicycle your bicycle?
3. These hats are her hats.
4. This room is their room.
5. This dog is our dog.
6. My flat is more comfortable than your flat.
7. Our house is near their house.
8. Which of the dictionaries is your dictionary?
9. Is this book his book?
10. Whose cat is this? Is it her cat or his cat?

**14. Choose the appropriate possessive pronoun.**

1. Mark is (their, theirs) cousin.
2. This is our car. It is (our, ours).
3. These are Mary's books. They are (her, hers).
4. White is (my, mine) favourite colour.
5. You can't have this book. It is not (your, yours).
6. (Her, Hers) house is big.
7. Is this (your, yours) coat? – No, it is not (my, mine).
8. Are these your friends' books? – Yes, they are (their, theirs).
9. That is (our, ours) house. It is (our, ours).

**15. Change the sentences according to the model, using demonstrative pronouns in the plural. Make other necessary changes.**

*Model: This girl is a student. – These girls are students.*

*That boy is brave. – Those boys are brave.*

1. This book is French.
2. This girl is in the garden.
3. That map is old.
4. This student is from Great Britain.
5. That flower is beautiful.
6. This is my bag.
7. This is a French text.
8. That room is nice.
9. This film is interesting.

**16. Fill in the blanks with personal pronouns.**

*Model: I see a girl, I see her.*

1. I see a teacher, I see \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Please, read this letter, read \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I know the boy, I know \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I'm glad to meet both Tom and Ann, I'm glad to meet \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Give me the books, please, give \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
6. I don't like Ann's brother, I don't like \_\_\_\_\_.
7. This task was given to you and me, it was given to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I left my umbrella at home, I left \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I often run into my neighbor in the morning, I run into \_\_\_\_\_.
10. On occasions the Browns have a walk in the city parks, they have a walk in \_\_\_\_\_.

**17. Paraphrase the following sentences. Pay attention to the indefinite article before nouns in the singular.**

*Model: He is my cousin. – He is a cousin of mine.*

*They are our friends. – They are friends of ours.*

1. She is their relative.
2. He is her friend.
3. We are your former students.
4. She is his niece.
5. I am your colleague.
6. They are her children.
7. She is our neighbor.

8. He is her ex-boss.
9. I am his student.
10. It's her office.

**18. Choose the right variant of the pronouns.**

1. They may be (our, ours) dictionaries.
2. He hasn't read a line of (your, yours). How can he criticize (your, yours) poems?
3. His compositions much more interesting than (your, yours) or (my, mine).
4. (Their, theirs) knowledge of the subject is not much superior to (our, ours).
5. I'm afraid they will take (her, hers) advice not (your, yours).
6. All (our, ours) clothes were extremely dirty, and (my, mine) especially so.
7. Will you help me to sort out things? I can't tell which are (your, yours) and which are (my, mine).
8. This is (your, yours) notebook. But where is (my, mine)?
9. She makes all (her, hers) clothes herself.
10. He patted Jess heartily on (her, hers) shoulder.

**19. Translate the sentences.**

1. Машина нашего дяди старая, а наша – новая.
2. Этот велосипед не мой, а их.
3. Её родители пенсионеры, а его – инженеры.
4. Я знаю, кто дал вам мой адрес.
5. Тот, кто учиться усердно, успешно сдает экзамены.
6. Эта спальня небольшая, но окна в ней достаточно большие.
7. Где твоя младшая сестра? – Она в кабинете.
8. Которая из этих книг их?

**20. Insert the right form of a reflexive pronoun.**

1. He shaves \_\_\_ every other day.
2. Go and wash \_\_\_.
3. She washed quickly \_\_\_ and went to prepare breakfast.
4. Behave \_\_\_!
5. He corrected the mistakes \_\_\_.
6. He thinks too much of \_\_\_.
7. We want to repair the bike \_\_\_.
8. I want to know more about you. Tell me about \_\_\_.

9. Did they cook breakfast \_\_\_?

10. She likes to do the flat \_\_\_.

**21. Find all types of pronouns in the following sentences. Translate the sentences.**

1. Lara found her purse. It was in our garden.

2. I have some free time to talk to you about their party.

3. The twins asked me to teach them roller-skating.

4. My mum devoted herself to us, her children.

5. I myself baked these cupcakes.

6. Don't touch this ticket. It's mine.

7. We saw her in that shop but she didn't see us.

8. Does anybody love Chemistry in your class?

9. It's not his car. It's hers.

10. Nobody will read those books.

**22. Use appropriate reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself, yourselves, ourselves, himself, herself, herself, themselves).**

1. The dog enjoyed ... with the children. (Собака веселилась с детьми.)

2. He cut ... while shaving in the bathroom. (Он порезался, когда брился в ванной.)

3. Did you hurt ... ? (Ты поранился?)

4. She introduced ... as Alice Brown. (Она представилась как Алиса Браун.)

5. Kids, it wasn't your fault. Please don't blame ... . (Дети, это была не ваша вина. Не вините себя, пожалуйста.)

6. Your face is dirty. Look at ... in the mirror. (Твое лицо грязное. Посмотри на себя в зеркало.)

7. I don't like people who usually talk about ... . (Не люблю людей, которые разговаривают обычно о самих себе.)

8. I am the winner and I'm proud of ... . (Я победитель, и я горжусь собой.)

**23. Choose appropriate personal and possessive pronouns. Translate.**

1. Give ... (my, me, mine) a glass of water.

2. Who is sitting behind ... (our, we, us)?

3. Would you like to dance with ... (he, him, his)?

4. Joanna is going to meet ... (them, they, their).

5. It took ... (he, him, his) 5 days to get to ... (you, your).

6. Please help ... (I, me, my) with ... (me, my) homework.
7. This is ... (me, my, I) cat. ... (His, Her, Its) name is Tom.
8. She promised to help ... (us, our, we) and she will keep ... (she, her, he) word.

**24. Choose the correct pronoun and translate the resulting sentences.**

1. Did you enjoy ... (myself, yourself, your) at the party? – Well. Nick did. But ... (I, my, me) didn't have a good time. I didn't know ... (someone, nobody, anyone) there. There were a lot of people and there was ... (anywhere, nowhere, somewhere) to sit. Fortunately there was much food, so I helped ... (myself, himself, yourself).
2. ... (What, Which, Who) of the two T-shirts do you like? – ... (I, Me, My) like both of ... (they, them, their). – And do you like ... (this, these, that) jeans? – I think... (they, them, their) are awful.
3. I haven't got ... (some, any, no) sweets for the kids today. Have you got ... (some, any, no) sweets? – Don't worry. I've got ... (some, any, no).
4. This is ... (my, me, mine) garage. And the car is ... (my, me, mine). That is ... (our, ours, us) house. And the garden is ... (our, ours, us).
5. ... (This, These, That) two rings belong to ... (him, his, he) grandmother.

## THE NUMERALS

---

**1. Count in English: a) from 1 to 10 and vice versa; b) dozens from 10 to 100 and vice versa; c) hundreds from 100 to 1000 and vice versa.**

- Numbers. Account in English 1-20
- Numbers. Account in English 20-60
- Numbers. Account in English 60-90

**2. Say and write in English.**

0, 12, 22, 39, 43, 55, 68, 73, 86, 94, 134, 282, 304, 471, 938, 1963

**3. Select quantitative numbers from the list and translate them.**

1.first; 2.eleven; 3.forty; 4.second; 5.two hundred; 6.twenty-first; 7.nineteen; 8.seven; 9.twelfth; 10.third; 11.fourth; 12.eight; 13.seventeen; 14.fifth; 15.nine; 16.one; 17.sixteen; 18.tenth; 19.fifty; 20.one hundred and first.



6. There are ... vegetables in the picture.
7. There are ... clocks in the picture.
8. There is ... flag in the picture.
9. There are ... letters in the picture.
10. There are ... forks in the picture.
11. There is ... book in the picture.

**9. Answer the questions. Write the answers in words.**

1. How many wheels does a car have? ...
2. How many seasons are there in a year? ...
3. How many wheels does a bicycle have? ...
4. How many fingers do you have? ...
5. How many letters are there in English ABC? ...
6. How many letters are there in Russian ABC? ...
7. How many letters are there in eight? ...
8. How many copecks are in one rouble? ...
9. How many days are there in a week? ...
10. How many days are there in a year? ...
11. How many legs do you have? ...
12. How much is  $5 + 4$ ? ...

**10. Find the 17 encrypted numerals.**

O	N	I	N	E	A	S	I	X	H
W	I	S	T	N	F	I	V	E	U
T	N	C	H	O	D	X	E	F	N
F	E	N	R	E	G	T	I	I	D
O	T	W	E	L	V	E	G	F	R
U	Y	H	E	I	J	E	H	T	E
R	X	S	E	V	E	N	T	Y	D
S	I	X	T	Y	K	V	Y	L	O
B	X	Z	R	E	Z	E	R	O	F
E	L	E	V	E	N	T	Y	B	U

**11. Write in numbers.**

1. Two hundred and forty-five, five hundred and thirty-three, eight hundred and sixteen.

2. Three thousand five hundred and sixty-two, seven thousand three hundred and twenty-four.

3. One hundred books, a hundred (of) pages, hundreds of people.

4. One thousand cars (a thousand cars), thousands of people, millions of books.

5. Two and three is five (two plus three equals five), seven minus four is three, three multiplied by five is fifteen, ten divided by two is five.

6. The 1st of January (1 January, January 1 – The first of January, January the first), the 8th of March (8 March, March 8 – The eighth of March, March the eighth).

7. Chapter five, bus six.

8. Three point four five, eight point zero nine.

9. Two thirds, four fifths.

**12. Find the pairs: the words from the first column and the corresponding numbers from the second.**

*E.g.: 1 – d*

1. thirteen	b) 11
2. fifty-six	c) 660
3. eighty	d) 72
4. eighteen	e) 315
5. twenty-three	f) 100
6. eleven	g) 13
7. ninety	h) 49
8. twelve	i) 925
9. twenty	j) 18
10. nineteen	k) 80
11. forty-nine	l) 504
12. one hundred	m) 217
13. thirty-one	n) 410
14. four hundred and ten	o) 90
15. six hundred and sixty	p) 56
16. five hundred and four	q) 23
17. nine hundred and twenty-five	r) 20
18. two hundred and seventeen	s) 19
19. three hundred and fifteen	t) 12

**13. Convert quantitative numbers to ordinal numbers.**

*E.g.: one (один) – the first (первый), thirty (тридцать) – the thirtieth (тридцатый), sixty-four (шестьдесят-четыре) – the sixty-fourth (шестьдесятчетвертый)*

1. two

2. eighty-three

3. seven hundred and sixteen
4. twelve
5. eleven
6. twenty-five
7. ninety-six
8. thirty-eight
9. ten
10. two thousand and nine

**14. Write the dates in parentheses in words.**

*E.g.: I was born on ..... (13.05.1976). (Я родился .....) – I was born on the thirteenth of May, nineteen seventy-six.*

1. My son was born on ..... (02.12.2000).
2. Our dog was born on ..... (21.08.2008).
3. My granddad was born on ..... (23.06.1900).
4. My granny was born on ..... (18.02.1910).

**15. Write fractions in words.**

*E.g.: 5/6 – five sixths, 2/3 – two thirds.*

- |        |          |
|--------|----------|
| 1. 1/2 | 5. 9/10  |
| 2. 5/8 | 6. 11/12 |
| 3. 1/3 | 7. 2/5   |
| 4. 4/7 | 8. 3/4   |

**16. Write the numbers.**

1. The number of Dwarves Snow White lived with – \_\_\_\_\_
2. The Celsius freezing point – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Days in April – \_\_\_\_\_
4. The number of letters in the English alphabet – \_\_\_\_\_
5. An unlucky number – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Teeth in the normal human mouth – \_\_\_\_\_
7. The number of years in a millennium – \_\_\_\_\_
8. The number of months in a year – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Days in December – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Degrees in a right angle – \_\_\_\_\_
11. Books in a trilogy – \_\_\_\_\_
12. Minutes in an hour – \_\_\_\_\_
13. Legs has an octopus – \_\_\_\_\_
14. The number of cents in a half-dollar – \_\_\_\_\_

15. Players in a soccer team – \_\_\_\_\_  
 16. Number of hours in a day – \_\_\_\_\_  
 17. Celsius boiling point – \_\_\_\_\_

**17. Form combinations of data in brackets of quantitative numerals in verbal form and data in brackets of nouns in the plural:**

*E.g.: (2) (a man) – two men*

- (3) (a woman),  
 (12) (a child),  
 (15) (an ox),  
 (18) (a sheep),  
 (32) (a tooth),  
 (57) (a bison),  
 (95) (a forget-me-not).

**18. Choose the correct form.**

1. My daughter is still a teenager. She is only fifteen/fifty.
2. He knew it was a painting worth \$10 million/millions.
3. Three hundred/Three hundreds people gathered at the stadium.
4. In the section 2/section 2 we also suggest other topics that need to be researched.
5. The first battle of the American Revolution was fought in year/the year 1775.
6. Hundred/A hundred years ago the principal means of communication was by post and telegraph.
7. How many children are there in the school? About three hundred/three hundreds.
8. The report has got over five hundred/five hundreds pages.
9. It happened in the year two thousand and two/two thousand and second.
10. All International flights are from Terminal One /the Terminal One.

**19. Fill in the blanks with data in brackets by quantitative numerals in verbal form.**

1. The division of the circle into \_\_\_\_\_ (360) parts occurred in ancient India, as evidenced in the Rigveda
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (22 200) donors from Manchester have been honoured at an awards ceremony for donating.
3. The newly elected board of directors consists of \_\_\_\_\_ (42) new members.

4. Chelsea won \_\_\_\_\_ (2:0) against Marseille at Stamford Bridge.
5. Russia is the largest country in the world by surface area, covering more than \_\_\_\_\_ (1/8) of the Earth's inhabited land area, with over \_\_\_\_\_ (144 000 000) people at the end of March \_\_\_\_\_ 2016.

**20. Hundred or hundreds? Choose the correct item.**

1. There were hundreds of people/hundred of people at the pool today.
2. That dress costs hundreds of pounds/hundreds of pound.
3. We've driven a hundred miles/a hundred mile in the last two hours.
4. I agree with you one hundred percent/one hundreds percent.
5. Hundreds/hundred of people watched the football match at the i stadium.
6. Eight hundred/eight hundreds is not enough. Her paintings cost thousands/thousand.
7. Benjamin received cards from scores/score of local people.
8. People are leaving the Nationalist Party by the score/by a score.
9. Nearly a thousand/thousands football fans were arrested.
10. There are literally thousands/thousand of people without homes.

**21. Fill in the blanks with the data in brackets by the nouns hundred, thousand, million, billion in the singular (with or without the article) or in the plural.**

1. Over the past two years, over \_\_\_\_\_ (million) immigrants found work, many illegally.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (thousand) of bees have been stolen from a British university.
3. Two \_\_\_\_\_ (hundred) years after the Constitution was signed, free-enterprise economics had produced doubtful results.
4. State prosecutors investigate more than \_\_\_\_\_ (thousand) cases of stolen babies in Spain.
5. According to the estimate, the world population has exceeded the number of seven \_\_\_\_\_ (billion) people
6. Officials issued public warnings after \_\_\_\_\_ (hundred) of sharks were spotted in the waters.
7. Roman Abramovich threw a party costing five \_\_\_\_\_ (million) pounds.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (million) of people in West Africa must be protected from a serious food crisis.
9. It has been found that walking ten \_\_\_\_\_ (thousand) steps a day will help you drop undesired pounds.

**22. Write the sentences.**

*Children in a running competition.*

*John – number 1, Peter – number 5, Joe – number 6,  
Lena – number 2, Spike – number 4, Jane – number 3*

*E.g.: John was the First.*

1. Lena was the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Peter was the \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Joe was the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Jane was the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Spike was the \_\_\_\_\_.

**23. Write the correct ordinal number.**

1. Saturday is the \_\_\_\_\_ day of the week.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ month of the year is June. .
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ month of the year is March.
4. In a competition the gold medal is for the \_\_\_\_\_ place and the silver medal is for the \_\_\_\_\_ place.

**24. Identify the ordinal position of the following letters: (The first one is done for you).**

1. H is the eighth letter.
2. T is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
3. Q is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
4. N is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
5. P is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
6. K is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
7. M is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
8. R is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
9. S is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
10. O is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
11. L is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
12. J is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
13. G is the \_\_\_\_\_ letter.

**25. Choose the correct form.**

1. It happened in the middle of the twentyth/twentieth century.
2. I usually go to school by bus six/bus sixth.
3. He is now ranked hundred/hundredth in the world of tennis.
4. 1999 was the second hundred/the two hundredth anniversary of; Pushkin's birth.

5. The car changed the life of people in the 20th/the 20s century.
6. At least two third/two thirds of the novel is about the life of people in the 19th century.
7. He was the third/the thirdth to arrive.
8. 8 The USA ranks third/three in population.
9. I am the one hundred and first/one hundredth and first in this huge line.
10. Vincent Van Gogh's paintings are among the most famous of the 19 century / the 19th century.

## THE WORDS OF THE CATEGORY OF STATE

---

### 1. Find only status verbs in the following list of verbs.

To love, to understand, to cost, to work, to need, to enjoy, to learn, to want, to hate, to like, to sleep, to believe, to agree, to answer, to translate, to prefer, to drive, to remember, to belong, to matter, to depend, to drink, to paint, to sing, to seem, to know, to leave, to own, to fall, to adore, to cry, to allow, to doubt, to plant, to travel, to promise.

### 2. Point out the words denoting state. Translate into Russian.

1. The afternoon was full of transfiguring sunshine, some Judas trees were abloom in the villa gardens... (Wells) 2. I did not mind for myself. I should not have cared if had been alone. (Du Maurier) 3....his soul was all ablaze with bliss... (Twain) 4. We are not afraid of the truth. (Gow and D'Usseau) 5. The rest of his costume... were the things he had worn at the funeral of his father. So nearly akin are human joy and sorrow. (Wells) 6. The lieutenant... Jay asleep on the other bed. (Hemingway) 7. He lit a pool of paraffin on the scullery floor and instantly a nest of wavering blue flame became agog for prey. (Wells) 8. He [Mr. Polly] rattled and stormed and felt the parlour already ablaze behind him. (Wells) 9. But Mr. Polly's establishment looked more like a house afire than most houses on fire contrive to look from start to finish. (Wells) 10. You know— everything there is to know about me. There's not much, because I have not been alive for wery long. (Du Maurier) 11. He did not answer. I was aware again of that feeling of discomfort. (Du Maurier).

### 3. Translate into English

А. Холодно, весело, сумрачно, морозно, ненастно, пора, неохота, лень, грех, надо, можно, нельзя, совестно.

В. Весело, радостно, грустно, печально. Задачу решил, на душе радостно.

Больно, душно, тяжело. Мне душно и жарко.

Морозно, ветрено, пыльно. По утрам в лесу сыро. Сегодня морозно.

С. 1. На празднике было весело. 2. Сегодня и завтра будет тепло. 3. Хорошо в лесу в сентябре! 4. Им будет стыдно, если они нам не помогут. 5. Это было по-настоящему позорно. 6. Нельзя было и мечтать о такой удаче!

## THE VERB

---

### 1. State the morphological composition of the verbs.

To worry, to precipitate, to forbid, to retire, to retell, to do away, to whitewash, to whiten, to ascend, to apologize, to engage, to enfold, to give in, to decompose, to translate, to transport, to browbeat, to subscribe, to subordinate, to run away, to underestimate, to backbite, to mislead, to forget, to succeed, to disobey, to take off, to overrun, to satisfy, to recede, to come in, to resign, to superintend, to descend, to blackmail, to put up, to unbind, to win, to counteract, to go on, to forecast, to befriend, to go away, to lie, to predispose.

### 2. Complete what Brenda says about herself on the picture. Use am, is or are.

My name (1) \_\_\_\_\_ Brenda Foster. I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ on the left in the picture. I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ten years old and I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in the fifth form. My birthday (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on the first of January. I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ from Santa Monica, California, USA. I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ American. My phone number (8) \_\_\_\_\_ 235-456-789. I live at 16 Park Street. My post code (9) \_\_\_\_\_ LA 30 SM. I've got a sister and a brother. Their names (10) \_\_\_\_\_ Gina and Paul. Gina (11) \_\_\_\_\_ 16 years old and Paul (12) \_\_\_\_\_ only three. I've also got a dog. His name (13) \_\_\_\_\_ Spot. He (14) \_\_\_\_\_ on the right in the picture. My Mum (15) \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor. She works at a hospital. My Dad (16) \_\_\_\_\_ a driver. He works in Los Angeles. We (17) \_\_\_\_\_ all friendly in our family.

### 3. The verb to be. Insert appropriate present forms.

A: Hi, Alex. How (1) \_\_\_\_\_ you?

B: Hello David. I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ fine and how (3) \_\_\_\_\_ you doing?

A: I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ doing fine.

B: How (5) \_\_\_\_\_ your sister? Where (6) \_\_\_\_\_ she now?

A: She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in London. She (8) \_\_\_\_\_ learning English there.

B: Really? That (9) \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful! How about your parents?

A: They (10) \_\_\_\_\_ fine too. They (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in Cyprus now.

B: (12) \_\_\_\_\_ you busy tonight?

A: Not really, why?

B: We (13) \_\_\_\_\_ having a party. Would you like to come?

A: I'd love to.

B: Then come to our place at 7:00 p.m.

### 4. Write in is / isn't, are / aren't, am / 'm not.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ lazy.
- My friend \_\_\_\_\_ naughty.
- My granny \_\_\_\_\_ kind.
- My granddad \_\_\_\_\_ clever.
- My teachers \_\_\_\_\_ funny.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a bad pupil.

### 5. Fill in is, are, He's, She's, I'm, They're.

- How \_\_\_\_\_ your mum? – \_\_\_\_\_ fine, thanks.
- How \_\_\_\_\_ your parents? – \_\_\_\_\_ OK.
- How \_\_\_\_\_ you? – \_\_\_\_\_ very well, thank you.
- How \_\_\_\_\_ your uncle? – \_\_\_\_\_ fine, thanks.
- How \_\_\_\_\_ your children? – \_\_\_\_\_ OK.
- How \_\_\_\_\_ Liz? – \_\_\_\_\_ fine, thanks.
- How \_\_\_\_\_ your cousin? – \_\_\_\_\_ very well, thank you

### 6. Write in am /'m not, is / isn't or are / aren't.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ a businessman.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a pupil.
- My friends \_\_\_\_\_ teachers.
- My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ a driver.
- My parents \_\_\_\_\_ doctors.
- My cousins \_\_\_\_\_ vets.
- My mum \_\_\_\_\_ a shop-assistant.

**7. Write in is /are**

1. How much \_\_\_\_\_ the trousers?
2. How much \_\_\_\_\_ these shorts?
3. How much \_\_\_\_\_ a pair of socks?
4. How much \_\_\_\_\_ this scarf?
5. How much \_\_\_\_\_ this dress?
6. How much \_\_\_\_\_ the jeans?

**8. Write in is / are**

1. These trousers \_\_\_\_\_ £30.
2. This hat \_\_\_\_\_ £5.
3. The socks \_\_\_\_\_ £3.
4. How much \_\_\_\_\_ the shoes?
5. How much \_\_\_\_\_ the jacket?

**9. Write the infinitive of the verb:**

Changed Smelt Took Drew Laughed Hit Kept Won Became Did

**10. Put the verbs do or make in sentences in the correct form.**

1. This problem has nothing to ... with my son. (Эта проблема не имеет ничего общего с моим сыном.)
2. What do you ... for your living? (Чем ты зарабатываешь на жизнь?)
3. Mary ... up a funny story about her rich boyfriend. (Мэри выдумала смешную историю о богатом друге.)
4. Listen! Who is ... that noise? (Послушай! Кто так шумит?)
5. She sits in front of the mirror and spends hours on her ... up. (Она сидит перед зеркалом и тратит часы на макияж.)
6. I'm a bit overweight, I need to ... some exercise. (Я немного поправился, мне нужно заниматься.)
7. We ... the shopping once a week. (Мы ездим за покупками раз в неделю.)
8. Anna is going to ... a pizza tonight. (Анна собирается приготовить пиццу вечером.)
9. The exam is over. I ... my best. (Экзамен окончен. Я сделал все, что мог.)
10. Alcohol ... much harm to your health. (Алкоголь причиняет много вреда твоему здоровью.)
11. I'll go and ... some coffee for us. (Пойду приготовлю для нас кофе.)
12. First he will ... his homework and then he will ... some housework.

(Сначала он выполнит домашнее задание, а затем немного уберется дома.)

13. Chris is ... very badly at school. (Крис очень плохо учится в школе.)

14. My dad ... a fortune out of importing fruits. (Папа сколотил состояние на импорте фруктов.)

15. If you ... a lot of mistakes you won't win. (Если ты будешь делать много ошибок, ты не победишь.)

### 11. Put verbs say or tell in sentences in the correct form.

1. Jack ... that he was at work in the morning. (Джэк сказал, что был на работе утром.)

2. Sandra ... the teacher that she was ill. (Сандра сказала учителю, что заболела.)

3. Alice ... it was windy in the garden. (Алиса сказала, что в саду было ветрено.)

4. Nick ... Bob that he didn't see the Tower Bridge. (Ник сказал Бобу, что не видел Тауэрский мост.)

5. Have you ... Frank about the news? (Ты рассказал Фрэнку про новость?)

6. What did your mother ...? (Что сказала твоя мать?)

7. The letter ... that our passports are ready. (В письме говорится, что наши паспорта готовы.)

8. Don't ... her what to do. (Не говори ей, что делать.)

9. People ... she is a bit crazy. (Люди говорят, что она немного сумасшедшая.)

10. They ... good-bye to their parents. (Они попрощались с родителями.)

### 12. Select the verbs from the first column of the antonyms (opposite in meaning verbs) from the second.

*E.g.: 1 – j (открывать – закрывать)*

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. to open      | a) to give    |
| 2. to love      | b) to die     |
| 3. to go to bed | c) to find    |
| 4. to work      | d) to divorce |
| 5. to start     | e) to forget  |
| 6. to leave     | f) to lend    |
| 7. to be born   | g) to finish  |
| 8. to break     | h) to hate    |

- |                    |              |
|--------------------|--------------|
| 9. to sell         | i) to buy    |
| 10. to lose        | j) to close  |
| 11. to take        | k) to come   |
| 12. to remember    | l) to shout  |
| 13. to whisper     | m) to build  |
| 14. to get married | n) to get up |
| 15. to borrow      | o) to relax  |

### 13. Put ready-made verbs in the text. Translate the story.

Moved – have – lives – is studying – was – will graduate – doesn't work – comes – is – wants – has – have lived.

George ... from Florida but he ... in Toronto. His family ... there when he ... ten. They ... a new house in the center. They ... in it for a year. Now George ... medicine because he ... to become a surgeon. He ... from the university next year. His father ... a small business and his mother .... She ... a housewife.

### 14. Choose the correct verb form

1. I ... (learn/have learnt/have been learning) Spanish since December. (Я изучаю испанский язык с декабря.)

2. We ... (were/have been/are) to France many times. (Мы были во Франции много раз.)

3. There ... (were/have been/are) too many people at the party yesterday. (Вчера на вечеринке было слишком много людей.)

4. Paul ... (was writing/wrote/has written) two novels last year. (Павел написал два романа в прошлом году.)

5. Every evening Jane ... (work/works/have worked) in a cafe as a waitress. (Каждый вечер Джейн работает в кафе официанткой.)

6. It ... (is raining/rains/will rain) heavily tomorrow. (Завтра будет сильный дождь.)

7. She ... (is waiting/waits/has been waiting) for the bus for one hour. (Она ждет автобус целый час.)

8. Ouch! I ... (cut/am cutting/have cut) my finger! (Ой! Я порезал палец!)

9. Kate ... (is sunbathing/has been sunbathing/has sunbathed) now. (Катя сейчас загорает.)

10. I really ... (enjoy/enjoyed/am enjoying) my last holiday in Venice. (Мне очень понравился мой последний отпуск в Венеции.)

**15. Choose the correct form of the verb.**

1. He ... (likes/is liking) his job. (Ему нравится его работа.)
2. We ... (know/are knowing) you are busy today. (Мы знаем, что ты занят сегодня.)
3. I ... (have/am having) French lessons on Tuesdays. (У меня уроки французского по вторникам.)
4. Caroline ... (has/is having) lunch at the moment. (В данный момент Каролина обедает.)
5. My parents ... (have/are having) a nice garden in the country. (У моих родителей есть хороший сад в деревне.)
6. I ... (need/am needing) some more time. (Мне нужно еще немного времени.)
7. ... (Do you realize/Are you realizing) what time it is? (Вы осознаете, который сейчас час?)
8. I am sorry but I ... (don't understand/am not understanding). (Простите, но я не понимаю.)
9. She ... (thinks/is thinking) about travelling to Spain. (Она подумывает о путешествии в Испанию.)
10. We ... (think/are thinking) your house is wonderful. (Мы считаем ваш дом прекрасным.)
11. Why ... (do you taste/are you tasting) the salad? Is it fresh? (Почему вы пробуете салат? Он свежий?)
12. ... (Do they agree/Are they agreeing) with my answer? (Они согласны с моим ответом?)
13. The luggage ... (contains/is containing) clothes only. (Багаж состоит лишь из одежды.)
14. ... (Do you believe/Are you believing) in god? (Вы верите в бога?)
15. I ... (see/am seeing) an elegant woman across the street. (Я вижу элегантную женщину по ту сторону дороги.)

**16. Find mistakes in the form of verbs (if any) and correct them.**

1. Yes, I am understanding what you mean.
2. I am not liking chocolate ice-cream.
3. Sandra is having a serious talk with her father now.
4. I'm OK and I don't need an ambulance.
5. My mum is adoring white roses.
6. They have a big house in the suburbs of Madrid.
7. Tom is preferring racing cars to motorbikes.
8. Are you hearing some noise in the kitchen?

9. I am thinking about finding a new job.
10. The kids aren't wanting any more biscuits.
11. Why aren't you agreeing with me?
12. He is not knowing my name.
13. That laptop belongs to me.
14. I'm not enjoying this party. The music is too loud.
15. How much is this perfume costing?

**17. Point out notional, auxiliary, modal, and link verbs.**

She went into the drawing-room and lighted the fire; then, picking up the cushions, one by one, that Mary had disposed so care-fully, she threw them back onto the chairs and the couches. That] made all the difference; the room came alive at once. As she was about to throw the last one she surprised herself by suddenly hugging it to her, passionately, passionately. But it did not put out the fire in her bosom. Oh, on the contrary!

The windows of the drawing-room opened onto a balcony overlooking the garden. At the far end, against the wall, there was a tall, slender pear tree in fullest, richest bloom; it stood perfect, as though becalmed against the jade-green sky. Bertha couldn't help feeling, even from this distance, that it had not a single bud] or a faded petal. Down below, in the garden beds, the red and yellow tulips, heavy with flowers, seemed to lean upon the dusk. A grey cat, dragging its belly, crept across the lawn, and a black; one, its shadow, trailed after. The sight of them, so intent and sky quick, gave Bertha a curious shiver. Really – really – she had everything. She was young. Harry and she were as much in love as ever, and they got on together splendidly. She had an adorable baby. They didn't have to worry about money. They had this absolutely satisfactory house and garden. (Mansfield)

**18. Point out all the verbs. State whether they are transitive or intransitive. Translate into Russian.**

1. She had spoiled his life, wounded his pride to death, defrauded him of a son. (Galsworthy) 2. The door opened, and a thick set heavy-looking young man entered... (Eliot) 3. The paddock was fairly well filled with people and they were walking the horses around in a ring under the trees behind the grandstand. (Hemingway) 4. Fleur did not answer. She stood for a moment looking at him and her mother... (Galsworthy) 5. After turning the matter over and consulting with Irene, he wrote to his daughter, Mrs. Val Dartie.. (Galsworthy) 6. The soldiers pushed the foreign workers into groups and led them off. (Heym) 7. Hughson marched him up to a sort of judge's desk that

was all glass and shining metal. (Priestley) 8. While she stood hesitating, the door opened, and an old man came forth shading a candle with one hand. (Hardy) 9. Fleur looked at her watch and rose. (Galsworthy) 10. It was Fleur's turn now. She spoke of dogs, and the way people treated them. (Galsworthy) 11. The stream which worked the mill came bubbling down in a dozen rivulets. (Galsworthy) 12. He was waiting for us... at the public house; and asked me how I found myself, like an old acquaintance. I did not feel, at first, that I knew him as well as he knew me, because he had never come to our house since the night I was born, and naturally he had the advantage of me. (Dickens)

## TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

---

### THE INDEFINITE FORM.

---

### THE PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE

---

#### **1. Put the verb into the third person singular.**

1. They watch too much TV (the boy). 2. The students hurry home after the classes (student). 3. We always carry an umbrella (this woman). 4. The children go to the nursery school (child). 5. Do you like oranges? (She). 6. I usually catch the six o'clock train (My brother). 7. They clean the flat every week (She). 8. We like fishing in the lake (My father). 9. They worry too much (She). 10. You do morning exercises every day (He).

#### **2. Make these sentences negative.**

1. I get up at half past eight every morning. 2. He writes letters regularly. 3. We help our mother about the house. 4. He watches TV every day. 5. My sister speaks English fluently. 6. Her father earns a lot of money. 7. We usually have lunch at the office. 8. They go shopping every weekend. 9. His brother studies at the university. 10. I usually come home at 7 o'clock. 11. We often go home together. 12. He plays football very well.

### 3. Correct the mistakes.

1. Jane earn a lot of money at her new work. 2. We play usually football on Monday mornings. 3. Everybody studys well in my form. 4. I always paint flowers in red or blue. These is my favourite colours. 5. Bears likes to eat honey. 6. My family lives in a big and beautiful house near the river. 7. Is everybody remember this rule? 8. Music consist of pleasant sounds. 9. Whose gloves is these? – These gloves is mine. 10. When he have some leisure time, he like to spend it in the open air. 11. What you usually do in summer? – I go to the seaside to relax. 12. She isn't know this man. She has never seen him before.

### 4. Ask the common questions.

1. He reads books almost every day. 2. She does her home work properly. 3. My mother knits very well. 4. I often write letters to my friends. 5. They play football very well. 6. We have dinner at 2 o'clock almost every day. 7. It rains all days in spring. 8. The students pass exams twice a year.

### 5. Ask the alternative questions.

1. My sister gets up at eight o'clock. 2. We go to school in the afternoon. 3. Jane is fond of sports. 4. She does her morning exercises every day. 5. They have two eggs, a sandwich and a cup of tea for breakfast. 6. It takes him two hours to do his homework. 7. My friends speak French well. 8. My working day begins at seven o'clock. 9. My father and I leave home at eight o'clock. 10. He takes a bus to his office.

### 6. Ask the special questions.

1. Kate reads a lot of books. 2. He works in the bank. 3. I watch TV every day. 4. They live in England. 5. My mother teaches children. 6. We play tennis every weekend. 7. The film finishes at 10 o'clock. 8. They go to Moscow almost every summer. 9. We start work at 8.30. 10. I enjoy playing darts.

### 7. Put the questions to the subject.

1. I usually help about the house. 2. He speaks a lot of languages. 3. Browns make nice things. 4. My parents discuss the news every evening. 5. My friend usually plays football with me. 6. The sports competitions take place almost every week. 7. We go to the seaside every summer. 8. Our teacher comes to the university early.

**8. Ask the special questions, using the words from the gaps.**

1. Kate plays the piano very well (How). 2. Many birds fly south every summer (How often). 3. Jane usually goes to work on Saturdays (When). 4. He always wears glasses (What). 4. Most of the students study well (How many). 5. He thinks that university is boring (Who). 6. The Volga flows into the Caspian Sea (Where). 7. I drink tea very often (Who). 8. My friends usually skate on the skating ring in our yard (Whose).

**9. Ask the tag questions.**

1. Tom drinks tea every morning. 2. We don't play football every day. 3. He is not a doctor. 4. I get up at 7 o'clock. 5. She leaves home at 8.30 every morning. 6. My mother is busy on Sunday. 7. We don't arrive home late. 8. They always do their homework. 9. They don't read the newspapers every evening. 10. She doesn't have a new dress.

**10. Form all possible questions to which the following sentences are the answers:**

1. I have poor eyesight, so I always wear glasses. 2. We sometimes miss the 9 o'clock train and have to wait for the next one. 3. Our lessons usually begin at 8 o'clock. 4. On Sundays they go to the cinema. 5. She lives in the country. 6. Generally I go to the university on foot because it is not far from my house. 7. Usually my mother has much work to do about the house. 8. His brother finishes his work at 6 o'clock. 9. They usually spend their holidays at the seaside. 10. His friend lives in London.

**11. Use the verbs given in brackets in the Present Indefinite tense:**

1. I (to learn) English at the University. 2. She (to like) music and pictures. 3. We (to know) many songs. 4. She (to play) tennis very well. 5. They (speak) to us every morning. 6. My friends (to work) at an office. 7. She often (write) to them. 8. It (rain) every week. 9. We often (send) them the letters. 10. She always (meet) him on Mondays. 11. They always eat porridge for breakfast. 12. We seldom (go) to the theatre? 13. He often (ask) me to supper. 14. I often (not come) here. 15. He (not play) football. 16. The office (open) at 9.00 and (close) at 19.30 every day. 17. He has a car but he (use, not) it very often. 18. "What you (do)?" – "I'm a teacher". 19. "Where your friend (come) from?" – "He (come) from Poland". 20. If you need money why you (get, not) a job? 21. She (play) the guitar, but she (play, not) very well. 22. I (understand, not) the word "emphatic". What "emphatic" (mean)? 23. What time the shops (close) in Stavropol?

### 12. Open the brackets, using the Present Indefinite Tense.

1. David (work, works, worked) as an officer. Before he (goes, go, going) to work in the morning he (buy, buys, bought) himself a large coffee. When you (ask, asks, asked) him about his job, he (explain, explained, explains) it (can, could) be dangerous sometimes. But he and his colleagues (do, did, does) not have exciting days very often. They (reads, read) the paper and (watch, watched, watches) training videos most of the time. David's colleague Kevin (writes, write, written) reports. David (says, said, say): "I (likes, like, liked) to be an officer!" Sometimes David (visit, visits, visited) schools and talk to children. Then David (try, tried, tries) to explain everything and what a great job it (am, is, are) to be an officer!

### 13. Explain the use of the Present Indefinite forms. Translate into Russian.

1. Every summer I go to the seaside to have a rest. 2. As a rule, they have 4 lessons on Mondays. 3. Do you ever eat meat? – No, I never eat meat. I am a vegetarian. 4. It often snows in winter in Russia. 5. Usually it takes me three days to drive to Los Angeles. 6. Every day she takes her children to the nursery school before she goes to work. 7. The plane arrives at 5:30 tomorrow morning. 8. This shop opens next week.

### 14. Ask your fellow-student:

1. how long it takes him/her to get to the university by bus; 2. if he/she studies well; 3. where they spend their summer/winter holidays; 4 when it rains much in Stavropol; 5. what time his/her lessons begin; 6. what he/she does when the weather is good; 7. what kind of sportsman he/she is; 8. how many museums there are in this city; 9. how well he/she speaks English; 10. if he/she has a cat; 11. how often he/she has got tests.

### 15. Say that somebody or something does the same. Give your reasons:

*Model: I have classes every day. And Kate?*

*Kate also has classes every day. She learns different subjects there.*

1. My friends prefer to travel by car. And your friends? 2. I am fond of music. And you? 3. His sister watches TV every evening. And her parents? 4. I always have breakfast at 7 o'clock. And you? 5. They often go to the cinema. And your brother? 6. He often speaks on the phone. And his younger sister? 7. I usually have 5 lessons a day. And you? 8. My friends are managers. And your friends? 9. There are 15 students in our group. And in your group? 10. You prefer tea to coffee. And your parents?

**16. Say that somebody or something doesn't do the same. Give your reasons:**

*Model: I usually read newspapers in the evening. And you?*

*I don't read newspapers in the evening. I read newspapers in the morning.*

1. It snows in winter. And in summer? 2. Mary is fond of playing the guitar. And you? 3. There are lots of sights in this large city. And in this small town? 4. I usually have a substantial breakfast. And you? 5. Lots of students make mistakes in spelling. And he? 6. She is very sociable and has many friends. And you? 7. Some people like autumn. And your mother? 8. I am always in time for my lessons. And you? 9. I am 18 and I have got a driving license. And you? 10. Usually it takes me 10 minutes to get to the shop. And your friend? 11. Sam is an early riser. He gets up at 7 o'clock. And his younger brother?

**17. Describe your daily activities by making sentences with frequency adverbs and the Present Indefinite.**

*usually, often, always, sometimes, seldom, never, rarely*

*Model: to drink coffee in the morning*

*Response: Student A: I usually drink coffee in the morning.*

*Student B: I never drink coffee in the morning.*

*Student C: (Student A) usually drinks coffee in the morning  
(Student B) never drinks coffee in the morning.*

- 1) to drink tomato juice in the morning
- 2) to be in time for classes
- 3) to be away from classes
- 4) to go to bed late at night
- 5) to have dinner at home
- 6) to study in the library
- 7) to watch TV in the evening
- 8) to go for a walk after classes
- 9) to do one's homework

**18. Open the brackets. Use the Present Indefinite and translate the sentences.**

1. How much time it (*to take*) you to do your homework? – Usually I (*to spend*) three or four hours on it. 2. What she (*to be*)? – She (*to be*) a teacher. She (*to work*) at school. 3. I never (*to listen*) to what you say. I always (*to think*) about something else. 4. You (*to recognize*) that man? – I (*to think*) I

have seen him before but I (*not to remember*) his name. 5. He (*to like*) to travel by plane? – No, he (*not to travel*) by plane very often. He (*to prefer*) trains. 6. The semester (*to end*) in two more weeks. 7. You (*to have*) usually a light or a substantial breakfast? – Frankly speaking, I (*to be*) a heavy sleeper and it (*to be*) very difficult for me to get up early. Sometimes and it (*to happen*) often I (*to oversleep*). Then I (*to be*) in a hurry and my breakfast (*to consist of*) a cup of tea or coffee. 8. The pie (*to smell*) delicious. 9. She (*to have*) a big family. There (*to be*) six members in it. 10. They often (*to go*) to the theatre? – Yes, they (*to be*) great theatre-goers. 11. It often (*to rain*) here in autumn? – Yes, it (*to rain*) almost every day, the weather (*to be*) dull and cool and there (*to be*) many puddles everywhere. 12. She (*to be*) busy now. She (*not to have*) any time to help you. 13. You (*to be*) good at tennis? – Yes, I (*to play*) it four times a week.

### 19. Respond to the following statements.

1. Model: – David 'sbrother plays computer games in his free time (your brother). – Does your brother play computer games, too?

1. Kevin plays the guitar every day (Peter). 2. My mother goes shopping on Sundays (Kate and Mary). 3. I like English tea (English coffee). 4. Tom reads the Times (the Guardian). 5. The Smith travel a lot (the Browns). 6. Flora likes video games (Lucy) 7. Mother watches TV in the afternoon (the kids). 8. Tom goes to the gym (Sara). 9. They speak Chinese (French). 11. Paul lives in France (his sister). 12. John works at the office (his son) 13. Mary enjoys music (you).

2. Model:– I see David every day (where) – Where do you see him? – In the library.

1. I come home late (why) 2. Alex often writes to his sister (how often). 3. Ben usually invites a lot of guests to his parties (whom) 4. Arthur earns a lot (how much) 5. I often play football in the evening (where) 6. I see Ronald every week (where) 7. I come here very often (why) 8. My friend studies foreign languages (what languages). 9. He goes to the cinema (how often). 10. She has dinner in the evening (what time).

### 20. Translate into English. Use the Present Indefinite.

1. Чем он занимается? – Он художник. Он часто выставляет свои картины в этой художественной галерее. 2. Ты всегда говоришь по телефону так долго? 3. Она никогда не стучит в дверь перед тем, как войти в комнату. 4. Кто обычно готовит завтрак в вашей семье? – Мама. Иногда я помогаю ей. 5. Научная конференция начинается 20 марта и

заканчивается 22 марта. 6. Разве ты не знаешь, кому принадлежит этот дом? 7. Ваш сын много читает? – Да, довольно много. Несмотря на то, что у нас дома много книг, он часто берет книги в библиотеке. 8. Майкл увлекается спортом. Он хорошо плавает и неплохо играет в футбол. 9. Чем занимается твой отец? – Он бизнесмен. К сожалению, я редко вижу его дома, так как он часто ездит в командировки. 10. В ее последнем диктанте много ошибок. Это странно, так как она неплохая студентка и редко допускает ошибки в письменных работах. 11. Поторопись! Профессор не любит, когда кто-нибудь опаздывает на его лекции. 12. Как часто ты навещаешь родителей? – Я езжу к ним каждое воскресенье. Они живут недалеко от города, и это занимает у меня полчаса, чтобы добраться до них.

## THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE

---

### 1. Complete the sentences with the Past Indefinite tense of the verbs in the brackets.

1. He (hurry) to catch his bus. 2. She (return) our books to the library. 3. Someone (tap) me on the shoulder. 4. They couldn't afford to keep their car, so they (sell) it. 4. She was very thirsty. She (drink) the water very quickly. 5. Ted and I played football yesterday. He's much better than me, so he (win) easily. 6. Kate (fall)down the stairs this morning and (hurt)her leg. 7. Jim (throw) the ball to Sue, who (catch) it. 8. Mary (spend) a lot of money yesterday. She (buy) a skirt. It (cost) 300.

### 2. Complete the sentences, put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative (Past Indefinite).

1. It was warm, so I (take) off my jacket. 2. The performance wasn't very good. I (enjoy) it very much. 3. She was very tired, so she (go) to bed early. 4. The bed was very uncomfortable. He (sleep) very well. 5. I wasn't hungry, so I (eat) anything. 6. They went to Sandra's house but she (be) at home. 7. It was a funny situation but nobody (laugh). 8. The hotel wasn't very expensive. It (cost) very much. 9. He was in a hurry, so he (have) time to phone you. 10. It was hard work carrying the bags. They (be) very heavy.

### 3. Put the verbs in the following sentences into the negative form.

1. She saw your brother. 2. We heard a terrible noise. 3. He looked at the picture. 4. She thought about it. 5. He hid the letter. 6. She found her watch. 7. She lent you enough money. 8. His son wrote a novel. 9. Tom laid the table. 10. Mr. Pitt fell downstairs. 11. She lost her way. 12. He forbade her to leave. 13. I sent it to the laundry. 14. They spent it all. 15. He forgave her.

### 4. Write these sentences in the positive, interrogative and negative forms of the Past Indefinite.

*Model: She teaches English at the university. She taught English at the university.*

*Did she teach English at the university? She didn't teach English at the university.*

1. I leave home at 8 o'clock. 2. She smokes a lot. 3. You look very tired. 4. The shop closes at 10 o'clock. 5. They have parties every weekend. 6. She speaks good English. 7. You drink a lot of tea. 8. They go shopping on Saturdays.

### 5. Translate into English.

1. Моя мать родилась в 1974 году. 2. Когда ему было 7 лет, он пошёл в школу. 3. Все мои друзья хорошо окончили школу, поступили в университет. 4. Зимой мы ездили отдыхать в горы. 5. Где ты была вчера? 6. Он захаживал сюда прошлым летом. 7. Я посетил так много прекрасных мест в Китае в прошлом году. 8. Он пришел в театр как раз вовремя, чтобы увидеть её выступление. 9. Все студенты выполнили домашнее задание вовремя.

### 6. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.

*Model 1:– Did the lift stop? – Of course, it stopped.*

1. Did you watch this film? 2. Did he talk to the teacher? 3. Did he send the letter? 4. Did they discuss the news? 5. Did you get the parcel? 6. Did you study at this school? 7. Did your mother cook the dinner? 8. Did he laugh? 9. Did she look for her key? 10. Did they visit the doctor? 11. Did you wait for him? 12. Did they like the competition? 13. Did you listen English lessons on the BBC? 14. Did you pass the exams?

### 7. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.

*Model 1:– Let's invite the Browns to dinner on Sunday (last Sunday) – Oh, no! We invited them to supper last Sunday.*

1. Let's visit Harry, (last month) 2. Let's clean the flat (last week). 3. Well, let's cook a Russian meal again on Monday night, (last Monday night). 4. Well,

let's watch this video, (the day before yesterday). 5. Let's ask Potter and Ted to come over, (only a few days ago). 6. Let's help your mother with the garden again, (last weekend). 7. Let's play cards with Kevin and Mary again, (last Saturday evening).

**8. Respond expressing agreement or disagreement. Use the words and word combinations in brackets.**

*Model – Peter didn't play tennis yesterday, did he? (for three hours) – Yes, he did. He played tennis for three hours.*

1. Harry didn't start early, did he? (late) 2. Alex didn't wait for you, did he? (for half an hour) 3. You studied English at school, didn't you? (for five years) 4. The Browns didn't travel last year, did they? (a lot) 5. She didn't play cards yesterday evening, did she? (chess) 6. Mrs. Harper walked in the park in the morning, didn't she? (for an hour) 7. You didn't talk about Kate, did you? (a lot) 8. The teacher didn't ask Sue, did he? (Mike) 9. You passed your exam last week, didn't you? (on Friday) 10. Ben didn't invite his friends to his wedding, did he? (all his friends) 11. John visited his friends last week, didn't he? (on Sunday) 12. Jane didn't receive any letters, did she? (three letters) 13. Helen phoned you on Monday, didn't she? (Susan)

**9. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model: – I got up at 6 today. – And yesterday? (at 6) – I got up at 7 yesterday.*

1. I did my homework this morning. And your sister? (yesterday evening). 2. Mark became a dentist. And his brother? (a teacher) 3. Alex went to work by bus. And Bob? (by car) 4. They had breakfast at 8 today. And yesterday? (at 9) 5. We wrote a dictation on Monday. And on Friday? (a grammar test) 6. He left the hotel at 8 today. And last Tuesday? (at 9) 7. They swam in the seaside before supper. And you? (after breakfast) 8. She woke up at 7 yesterday. And the day before yesterday? (At 7) 9. I made a lot of mistakes in my last test. And you? (few) 10. We ate meat for supper. And for breakfast? (fish) 11. I spent our day off in town. And you? (in the country) 12. She slept till 8 today. And yesterday? (till 9) 13. I took three books in the library last week. And this week? (five books).

**10. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model: – I met Sue yesterday. – So did I. I also met her yesterday.*

1. They began the work early. 2. Mr. Smith brought some books. 3. Henry came at 8. 4. He spoke English at the reception. 5. They went on a picnic at

the weekend. 6. My friend caught a lot of fish. 7. I sold my car last month. 8. He bought that dictionary. 9. She read much in summer. 10. I ate meat for dinner. 11. They sent her a letter. 12. The students wrote a dictation. 13. She woke up early today.

**11. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model: – You usually buy vegetables at your local shop, don't you? (the market). – Yes, but today I bought them at the market.*

1. Drink water (milk); 2. buy oranges (pears); 3. meet Sally at the hotel (at the club); 4. send the documents by post (by hand); 5. go with Sam (with Dan); 6. go by car (by taxi); 7. say too little (too much); 8. sit downstairs (upstairs); 9. leave at nine (at eight); 10. write six lines (six pages); 11. ring him up at 8 (at 9); 12. spend a lot of money (little); 13. do the housework in the evening (in the morning).

**12. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model:– Did Sheila sing at the party? (beautifully) – Yes, she sang beautifully.*

1. Did you find her flat? (easily) 2. Did Mary speak French? (fluently) 3. Did Tom drive the car? (carefully) 4. Did your mother do the work alone? (quickly) 5. Did it rain yesterday? (hard) 6. Did Kelly learn the poem? (easily) 7. Did she send the telegram? (immediately) 8. Did Sam play the guitar? (very well) 9. Did you enjoy the party? (very much) 10. Did it snow on Friday? (hard) 11. Did this student play football? (very well).

**13. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model: – Who did you give the books to? (Jane) – I gave the books to Jane.*

1. Who did he lend the hammer to? (my father ) 2. Who did you send the parcel to? (my friends) 3. Who did you write that letter to? (my cousin) 4. Who did you sell your house to? (Mr. Willy) 5. Who did you speak to? (the teacher) 6. Who did you read the letter to? (Alec) 7. Who did she give the cell phone to? (her sister).

**14. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model: – When did you go to London? (last year) – I went to London last year.*

1. When did he wear this dress? (a month ago) 2. When did you speak to the doctor? (on Monday) 3. When did you see the parents? (last week)

4. When did Fred have a holiday? (in autumn) 5. When did it rain last? (on Saturday) 6. When did they begin the experiment? (a week ago) 7. When did they buy the car? (two months ago) 8. When did they last go fishing? (on Sunday) 9. When did the train leave? (an hour ago) 10. When did you do the homework? (yesterday evening) 11. When did you drive to the country? (on Tuesday) 12. When did you have supper? (an hour ago) 13. When did you get the letter? (last night) 14. When did you make that bookcase? (last month) 15. When did you lose your bag? (the day before yesterday).

**15. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model: – Did you make an appointment for Friday afternoon? (Saturday morning) – No, I didn't, but I made an appointment for Saturday morning).*

1. Did you take that parcel to the post office? (all the letters) 3. Did you speak to Mr. Robinson on the phone? (his secretary) 4. Did Tad ring you up at school? (at home) 5. Did you go to the cinema? (theatre) 6. Did Sam eat all the cheese last night? (ham) 7. Did you buy any ice cream from the supermarket? (yoghurt) 8. Did you spend a lot of money at the supermarket? (at the new dress shop). 9. Did you swim in the seaside? (in the lake) 10. Did you write any letters? (postcards) 11. Did you eat apples? (oranges) 12. Did Mark see Tom? (his sister).

**16. Respond to the following utterances. Do it, as in the examples.**

*Model: – Did Bill translate the letter? (Mike) – No, it was Mike who translated it.*

1. Did you tell Ann? (Mary) 2. Did you send the telegram? (Mrs. Brown) 3. Did your mother cook the cake? (my sister) 4. Did Ronald bring the books? (his brother) 5. Did Kelly break the vase? (her sister) 6. Did you phone Mike? (Victor) 7. Did Sally help? (Kate) 8. Did John catch that fish? (Ted) 9. Did your friend make that bookcase? (my father) 10. Did Mark pay the bill? (David) 11. Did Mr. Smith teach you? (Mr. Harper) 12. Did you write that letter? (Kitty).

**17. Make these sentences interrogative and negative.**

1. She worked at the library last year. 2. He spent his winter vacation in Moscow. 3. She brought me three magazines yesterday. 4. My sister studied French at school. 5. My pupils asked me a lot of questions at the last lesson. 6. My mother bought a new suit last week. 7. My father left for St. Petersburg yesterday. 8. He got up at ten o'clock yesterday. 9. My uncle taught me to swim in my childhood.

**18. Put the verbs into Past Indefinite.**

1. I understand the article well. 2. I listen to this music. 3. I find many good stories in this book. 4. The students spend much time in the library. 5. She makes many mistakes in her test. 6. They read many English books.

**19. Open the brackets.**

1. She (to make) tea for her guests. 2. We (to know) everything about that event. 3. He (to think) much about this problem. 4. I (to be) wrong and apologized to him. 5. He (not to realize) his mistakes. 6. When you (to speak) to him? – I (to speak) to him only yesterday. 7. She (not to get) letters from her son last month. 8. He (to go) to the airport to meet his brother. 9. What you (to do) yesterday evening? – Nothing in particular. We (to watch) TV and (to look) through newspapers.

**20. Translate into English.**

1. Мне понравилось представление. 2. Он встретил их в парке. 3. Мы не получили его ответ вчера. 4. Она отправила позавчера письма своим друзьям. 5. У него не было времени делать эту работу. 6. Я читал этот журнал вчера. 7. Мы провели каникулы в Москве. 8. Они сдали экзамен по английскому в понедельник. 9. Вчера они вернулись домой поздно. 10. Я получил отличную оценку за контрольную. 11. Мы нашли много интересных книг в его библиотеке. 12. Он вспомнил её номер телефона. 13. После лекции мы ответили на все вопросы. 14. Мы оплатили этот счет вчера. 15. Он проснулся очень рано вчера. 16. Машина ехала очень быстро. 17. Прошлым летом она учила детей плавать. 18. Вчера в кинотеатре они много смеялись. 19. Мы сели и попросили чашку кофе.

## THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE

---

**1. Agree and promise to do something.**

*E.g.: – Can you clean the flat? – Sure, I'll clean it this evening. – Do you promise? – Yes, I promise. I'll clean it this evening.*

1. Can you phone me later? – Sure, ... tonight. – Do you promise? – Yes, ... . 2. Can you repair the car? – Ok, ... tomorrow. 3. Please, don't tell

anyone. – All right, ... . 4. Please, don't hurt me. – Don't worry, ... . 5. Can you give me this book? – Sure, ... tomorrow. 6. Can you print this document for me? – Sure, ... today.

## **2. Ask the special questions, using the words from the gaps.**

1. Ronald will be at the office in 15 minutes (Where). 2. The conference will start next month (When). 3. Kate will buy a new flat (What). 4. Sandra will come soon (Who). 5. We will go to the theatre at 7 o'clock (What time). 6. They will fly to Egypt next week (Where).

## **3. Answer the questions.**

*E.g.: – What are you going to do tomorrow? (go to the mountains) – I'll probably go to the mountains.*

1. Where is he going to spend his winter holidays? (go to the country)  
2. What are you going to do? (read the book) 3. What are your plans for tomorrow morning? (pass an exam) 4. What is your friend going to do tomorrow evening? (play tennis) 5. What is he going to do? (send a parcel) 6. Do you think they'll come on time? (be late) 7. What are you doing this weekend? (visit my parents)

## **4. You are in the situations like the following. Respond to these situations.**

*Begin the sentences with I think I'll ...or I don't think I'll...*

*E.g.: It's cold. You decide to close the window. – I think I'll close the window.*

1. Your father offers you a lift in his car but you decide to walk. 2. You feel tired. You decide to go to bed. 3. You arranged to play football. Now you decide you don't want to play. 4. You were going to go to the sea. Now you decide that you want to go. 5. You were going to buy a flat. Now you decide that you don't want to. 6. Your friend invites you to the museum but you decide to go to the cinema.

## **5. Answer the questions. Use the words and word combinations in brackets.**

*E.g.:– When do you think they will arrive? (expect/tonight) – I expect they will arrive tonight.*

1. What do you think he'll say? (probably/nothing) 2. Where do you think he'll go? (expect/Moscow) 3. When do you think he'll leave? (think/tomorrow) 4. How do you think she'll get there? (expect/by bus) 5. When do you think

he'll be back? (think/quite/soon) 6. Who do you think will win? (I'm sure/ David) 7. Where do you think she will stay? (probably/at her brother).

### 6. Complete the sentences with I'll + word combinations.

*E.g.:- We haven't got any apples.- Oh, haven't we? ... get some.- I'll go and get some.*

1. It's a bit cold in the flat. – Is it? ... the heating then. 2. I'm too tired to walk home. I think ... a taxi. 3. It's too late to telephone Ted now.... in the morning. 4. Would you like tea or milk? – ... tea, please. 5. I feel a bit hungry. I think ... something to eat. 6. Did you write that letter to Jane? – Oh, I forgot. Thanks for reminding me. ... in the evening.

### 7. Make short dialogues using the following words and word combinations.

*E.g.:- I wonder if Henry will buy that phone.- I expect (think) so.*

1. Ronald/get a rise; 2. Tess/pass her exam; 3. Fred/ repair the car; 4. Alec/ arrive; 5. Sue and Kevin/get married; 6. Jack/ go to the mountains; 7. Mike/ tell his parents about it; 8. Susan/stay at her parents; 9. Kate/take part in competition; 10. Sara/ invite Kelly.

*E.g.:- I wonder (I'd like to know) when Mark will come. – I've no idea about it.*

1. Lucy/buy the tickets; 2. Robert/write to us; 3. Alec and Alice/ get married; 4. Tom/tell Kate about it; 5. they/finish the work; 6. they/ start the experiment; 7. Sally/be back.

### 8. Ask the speaker to repeat what he has just said.

*E.g.:- I'll see Victor on Sunday. – Pardon? When will you see him? – On Sunday.*

1. Alex will be away for a week, (how long). 2. I'll be back next week, (when) 3. We'll invite twenty people to the party, (how many). 4. I'll be in London next month, (where). 5. I'll have my English classes three times a week, (how often). 6. The teacher will give two books (how many). 7. I won't come because I am busy, (why). 8. David will book the tickets, (who) 9. She will learn phonetics. (what). 10. They'll send him two documents, (how much) 11. I'll be at the theatre at 6. (where) 12. I'll marry Kate Harper, (who).

### 9. Ask questions. Use the words and word combinations in brackets.

*E.g.:- I'm leaving, (you/be back/soon) – You'll be back soon, won't you? – I think I shall (will).*

1. Mark is in Moscow on business, (he/call on you). 2. The documents are ready, (you/send them/yourself). 3. I am thirsty, (you/have some water) 4. The teacher is out, (you/wait for him). 5. Victor is going to celebrate his birthday, (he/be/twenty-one).

*E.g.: – The station is not far from here, (you/not/take a taxi) – You won't take a taxi, will you? – I don't think I shall.*

1. We've got some time left, (we/not/be late) 2. Jane is very busy right now, (he/not/come to the party). 3. Victor has a cold, (he/not/take part in the picnic) 4. I usually see Mary on Monday, (you/not/see/her/ tomorrow) 5. We usually spend our holidays at the mountains, (you/not/ go to the mountains /this summer).

### **10. Translate into English, using the verb to be in Future Indefinite.**

1. Я буду завтра в институте. 2. Она будет зубным врачом. 3. Где ты будешь завтра? Я буду дома. 4. Мы будем в Москве на следующей неделе. 5. Его не будет на работе завтра. 6. Он будет в командировке. 7. Позвони ему позже. Может быть, он будет дома. 8. Завтра никого не будет в офисе.

### **11. Make these sentences interrogative and negative.**

1. My sister will graduate from the University next year. 2. I shall go to the cinema tomorrow. 3. They will play tennis on Saturday. 4. We shall translate this text the day after tomorrow. 5. He will write a letter to his sister tomorrow. 6. My parents will go to the South next year. 7. I shall finish this work in a week. 8. He will come back on Friday. 9. We shall meet our friends tomorrow.

### **12. Translate into Russian.**

1. Я уверен, что вы решите эту проблему. 2. Она не зайдет к нам в воскресенье. 3. Я не буду учить эту поэму завтра, я буду писать сочинение. 4. Мы навестим нашу маму в больнице послезавтра. 5. Этот врач будет лечить вашего отца. 6. Наши друзья приедут вечером. 7. Не волнуйся! Я достану тебе билеты. 8. Они будут ждать нас в холле. 9. Они поедут в Крым в августе. 10. Я полечу в Великобританию самолетом.

### **13. Open the brackets.**

1. I (to think) about this information. 2 According to the forecast it (to be) raining tomorrow. 3. I (to prepare) to my examinations next week. 4. You (to show) me your new picture? 5. I think he (not to come) tomorrow. 6. I don't

think she (to answer) all the questions. 7. We (to work) in our garden tomorrow. 7. How you (to pack) your things? 9. Her mother (to buy) her a silver chain for her birthday. 10. We (to come) to see you on Monday.

#### 14. Translate into English.

1. Представление закончится в 8, так что к 9 часам мы будем дома. 2. Мне кажется, что, если ей понадобится наш совет, она сама свяжется с нами. 3. Родители приезжают сегодня вечером. Вы их будете встречать? 4. Пойдем в театр в субботу! – Не могу. Мы с Аней будем готовиться к экзамену. 5. Я не знаю, когда я поеду на море. 7. Когда у студентов начнутся занятия? 9. Я думаю, эту машину очень дорого и сложно будет отремонтировать. 10. Если ты как следует это обдумаешь, ты увидишь, что я прав. 11. Ты же промокла насковозь! Садись, я приготовлю тебе чай. 12. На небе – ни облачка. Будет прекрасный день! 13. Я уверена, что она не будет возражать, если ты возьмешь книгу. 14. Интересно, понравится ли им наше предложение? А что, если они не согласятся с нами?

#### 15. Open the brackets, using verbs in Future Indefinite.

1. I think it ... (rain) heavily soon. 2. ... you (bring) me my books, please? 3. The train ... (arrive) there at 6 a.m. tomorrow. 4. I ... (repay) it next week. 5. I ... (do) it whether they like it or not. 6. I ... (meet) you here at five o'clock tomorrow. 7. ... I (bring) you a cup of tea? 8. What do you think the teacher ... (say) to that? 9. ... you never (learn) to behave properly? 10. What... I (do) with this old hat of yours? 11. I expect your friend ... (return) soon. 12. "... you kindly (open) the door for me?" she asked. 13. What ... I (do) with these documents?

#### 16. Make requests with will.

*E.g.:* – *You are sitting at the breakfast table and want the salt and pepper. You ask your neighbour: "Will you pass me the salt and pepper, please?"*

1. You are busy and can't answer the phone. You ask your friend: ...? 2. The tea is practically cold. You ask the waiter: ...? 3. You want to light a cigarette but you have no lighter. You ask your colleague: ...? 4. You want to call your friend but you have no cell phone. You ask your friend: ...? 5. You are short of money. You ask your friend: ...? 6. You are in bed with the flu. You want to listen to the 8 o'clock news. You ask your sister: ...?

#### 17. Offer your services in response to the following statements.

Your friend will accept or refuse the offer politely.

*E.g.:- Victor doesn't know about the meeting. – Shall I tell him? – Do, please.*

1. I have a terrible headache.
2. The text is too difficult.
3. I am thirsty.
4. My father is coming at 7 o'clock but I have an appointment at that time.
5. He can't do this work alone.
6. I'd like something to read.
7. I am very tired.
8. I haven't got this dictionary.
9. She doesn't know about the picnic.

### **18. Suggest to your friend:**

Going to the museum, spending the weekend in the country, playing a game of football, having a swim, watching the news on television.

*E.g.:- Shall we play cards? – Good idea.*

Possible replies to suggestions: OK; Yes; All right; Good idea; I'm afraid (sorry) I can't.

### **19. Make requests and respond appropriately in the following situations.**

1. Chief to the secretary: type these letters, print the documents, send the parcels, work overtime, answer the phone.

*E.g.:Will you please send this parcel? – OK.*

2. Friend to friend:

a) Your friend is going on holiday: send me a letter, write to me, look after my flat.

b) You need your friend's help in a number of ways: translate this text for me, repair my computer, post the parcel, lend me some money, carry my bag.

*E.g.:Possible replies to requests: OK; Yes; Certainly; I'll try; I'm afraid (sorry) I can't.*

### **20. Translate into English.**

1. Пожалуйста, переведи эту статью. – Попытаюсь. 2. Купить тебе этот словарь? – Да, пожалуйста. 3. Где мы встретимся? Давай встретимся у кинотеатра в семь. 4. Не сыграть ли нам в шахматы? – Сожалею, но не могу. Я иду в институт. 5. Пойдем завтра в театр? – Хорошая идея. 6. Включить телевизор? – Да. 7. Пожалуйста, передайте мне соль. 8. Ты не одолжишь мне немного денег? – Конечно. 9. Пригласить Виктора на день рождения? 10. Напечатать эти письма? – Да, пожалуйста. 11. Поедем завтра за город? – Боюсь, что не смогу. Завтра я буду занят. 12. Купить вам билет на матч? – Да. Это очень любезно с вашей стороны. 13. Вынескажете, который час? – 10.30.

## THE FUTURE IN THE PAST

---

### 1. Open the brackets, using Future in the Past

1. He was afraid they (exclude) him from the club (will exclude/would exclude/would be excluding). 2. Kate thought her brother (watch) TV at 7 o'clock in the evening (would be watching /would watch /will be watching). 3. I expected Peter (come) earlier, but he was late(would come/would be coming/would have come). 4. Ann said she (study) English for five hours till dinner(would have been studying /would have studied/would be studying). 5. I told everybody that I(leave) the next day (were leaving /would leave / would have left). 6. They promised that they (work) more (will work/would work/would have worked). 7. I thought Sally (become) a doctor (would become/would be becoming/will become). 8. We knew she (walk) at that time (would walk /would be walking/would have walked). 9. We promised we (finish) watching the film by the time my favorite program started (would have been finishing/would finish/would have finished). 10. Everybody believed she (pass) this exam (would pass/would be passing/will pass). 11. I thought Ann (dining) in this restaurant when I visited it (would dine /would be dining /will be dining). 12. I was sure that she (come) before me (would come/would have come /would have been coming). 13. I decided I (quit) that job in three months (would be quitting /would have quit /would quit). 14. She said she (sleep) when we returned form the party (would sleep /would be sleeping /would have slept). 15. We knew he (work) for 12 hours by the time we came home(would have been working /would be working/would have worked).

### 2. Make these sentences negative.

1. He said that he would be late today. 2. They knew that they would come back next week. 3. Mark believed that we would find his friend in that town. 4. Victor and Ann hoped that their family business would succeed. 5. He supposed that he would be sleeping at 9. 6. They understood that Sue would not be assisting us. 7. We hoped we would have finished the project by Monday. 8. We hoped that the project would have been finished by Friday. 9. I told him that I would have been driving that car for 11 years next year.

### 3. Make these sentences interrogative.

1. I didn't think the noise would disturb anyone. 2. We thought she would ask for early retirement at that time. 3. She said she would pay back all her

debt. 4. He said he would give me a lift. 5. Last year at this time, I thought I was going to buy a new car. 6. He decided that he was going to pursue Master's degree last year. 7. It was going to rain as there was strong wind and dark cloud. 8. He had hard time with his boss; I thought he was going to leave. 9. She thought she was seeing the doctor later that day. 10. I thought they were leaving the next day. 11. When I was drinking there, I heard the shop was to close at 11. 12. The government announced last year that it was to expand the road to the airport. 13. She was about to leave when his mother called. 14. I was about to mark his absent when he walked into the class.

**4. Complete the sentences (would + verb or was/were + going to + verb).**

*E.g.: I thought that there would be cars before the 1940s.*

1. They promised I would ... before 2019. 2. They thought there ...helicopter trains in 1950. 3. He told you there... lots of cars in 2002. 4. Husband and wife talking on the phone. Husband at football match, wife at home "Before you ... (go) to the football match, I ...(make) you some lunch. 5. They promised that they... (come) to my birthday party, but no one came! 6. By the time he ...(arrive), it... (be) too late.

**5. Explain the use of Future in the Past. Translate into Russian.**

1. She said she would not eat a watermelon. 2. She said she would not be eating watermelon at 6 o'clock the next day. 3. She said she would not have eaten watermelon by midnight. 4. She said she would not have been eating this watermelon for 10 minutes before her husband comes.

**6. Complete the sentences, put the verb into the correct form (Future in the Past).**

1. I forgot you were coming (come) for supper. 2. The police were going to charge (charge) me with robbery. 3. The start of the film was wonderful. I hoped it would get (get) better, but in fact it got worse as it went on. 4. I went to bed early as I was leaving (leave) for New York the next day. 5. He was a sensible boy, and she knew he would take (take) care of him. 6. You were going to show (show) me the photos, but we were interrupted.

**7. Choose the correct or most appropriate form/s to refer to the future in the past for the sentences.**

1. I ...Sam for money, but I didn't because I don't want to own him anything(was asking/ would ask/ will ask/ was going to ask). 2. I had a feeling

that the party ....a disaster. Choose TWO correct options (would be/ was being/ was to be/ was going to be. 3. We didn't expect that he...like that (would react/ was reacting/ would be reacted/ will react. 4. She... her speech when someone threw an egg at her. Choose TWO correct options (would finish, was about to finish, was going to finish, would be finishing). 5 I told you she ...everybody. She can't keep a secret(was going to tell/ was telling/ will tell/ told.

**8. Fill in the gaps using the verb in brackets in a future form so that it expresses the idea suggested above. Do NOT use contractions.**

1. *Intention or plan*. The last time I spoke to you, you...(start) a business. Did you do it? 2. *arrangement*. Sorry, I forgot we...(have) dinner together today. 3. *prediction*. I knew you...(get) upset. 4. *arrangement*. I'm sorry I didn't stop to say him yesterday, but I...(meet) my boss at 7. 5. *action in progress*. We knew that in a week's time we...(lie) on the beach. 6. *intention or plan*. When... (you/tell) us? 7. *promise*. You assured us that... (there/be) no delays. 8. *timetabled event*. The train (depart) at 8, so we had to hurry to the station. 9. *action in progress*. I knew if I didn't call, he...(try) to contact me all day. 10. *intention or plan*. If she knew Sam... (leave), she could have told us.

### 9. Translate into English.

1. Мои родители сказали, что я буду учиться в университете. 2. Он решил, что я поеду в офис. 3. Я подумала, что мы будем жить в новом доме. 4. Мой друг сообщил, что ты уедешь в Германию через год. 5. Он думал, что ты пойдешь утром в институт. 6. Дети подумали, что они уедут из Москвы через неделю. 7. Она сказала, что посмотрит этот журнал. 8. Он сказал, что его друзья будут в Швейцарии в июне. 9. Я думала, что профессор будет выступать на конференции. 10. Они решили, что их дети будут учиться в этой школе. 11. Его брат сказал, что они будут работать в магазине. 12. Она сказала, что скоро уедут на море.

### 10. Open the brackets, using Future in the Past.

1. My friends promised that they (bring) ...us all the necessary books. 2. He did it better than I (expect)... he would. 3. He said that the cars (be)... there soon. 4. I think it all happened soon after the meeting (end)... 5. He said that he (can)... not do it without my help. 6. We asked the students whether they ever (be) ... at the conference. 7. It was decided that we (start)...our work at

five o'clock. 8. I told you that I (leave)... city on the following day. 9. I did not know that you already (get)... the letter. 10. She wanted to know what (become)...of the books. 11. I was told that the boss just (go out)... and (to come back)... in half an hour. 12. We were afraid that he not (be able ... to finish his work in time and therefore (offer)... to help him. 13. They said we (may)... keep the book as long as we (like) ... 14. When I called at her house, the parents (tell)...me that she (leave)... an hour before.

### **11. Translate into English.**

1. Она сказала, что не будет переводить эту статью, когда ее муж придет. 2. Они подумали, что не будут убирать квартиру и готовить ужин, когда вернутся их родители. 3. Я считала, что буду ходить по магазинам целый день. 4. Мария пообещала, что они не будут обсуждать эти вопросы, когда придет её начальник. 5. Я подумал, что выполню домашнее задание, в то время как мама будет готовить обед. 6. Я подумала, что сделаю это завтра, если вы поможете мне. 7. Я считал, что вы не будете писать эту статью, в то время как Ник будет в командировке. 8. Я ему сказала, что буду заниматься немецким и готовиться к экзамену, когда он вернется с работы. 9. Я решила, что буду купаться и загорать с 9 до 10 часов утра завтра, если будет хорошая погода. 10. Преподаватель сообщил, что студенты будут сдавать экзамены в университете в понедельник с 9 до 11 часов утра. 11. Когда вошел преподаватель, студенты встали и поприветствовали его? 12. Когда он ремонтировал машину, я читала книгу. 13. Она еще не сделала 3 задания из этого упражнения. 14. Он учится здесь с 2002 года. 15. До того как они смогут здесь работать, они 5 лет будут учиться в университете.

### **12. Translate into English.**

1. Сандра сказала мне, что вчера не ходила в университет. Она объяснила, что плохо себя чувствовала и решила остаться дома. 2. Я думал, что, к тому времени как она вернется из командировки, мы уже все сделаем. 3. Майк сказал, что вчера была хорошая погода, и они решили поехать за город. Он рассказал, что они прекрасно провели время за городом. 4. Она пообещала, что сделает перевод статьи к концу той недели, но до сих пор не сделала работы. 5. Родители обещали, что в субботу мы пойдем в театр. 6. Сообщите мне, когда они придут в институт. 7. Мы не знаем, зайдем ли мы к нему в гости, когда будем в его районе. 8. Они обещают, что если будет хорошая погода, в воскресенье мы поедем за город. 9. Роман только что сказал мне, что вчера не

ходил по магазинам. 10. Я не знаю, как долго он уже работает здесь.  
11. Я уже сделала домашнее задание и хочу пойти погулять в парк.

### **13. Use the verbs in the brackets using Future in the Past.**

1. Victor reminded us that at time he (to fly) to Berlin. 2. I was sure that my husband (to sleep) at that time. 3. She didn't believe that they (to learn) the lesson then. 4 We understood that she (to play) the piano at seven o'clock. 5. If they won that price they (to live) in Bahamas very soon. 6. She hoped her son (to sleep) when she returned.

### **14. Translate the sentences.**

1. The boy ran fast as he knew it would soon get dark. 2. I knew that Sandra would never agree to my plan. 3. Mr. Smith said that he would state his request again. 4. She knew for sure that John would turn up at all costs. 5. Tom really didn't think they would reach the point so quickly. 6. Everybody was sure they would enjoy an excellent company. 7. Jane was afraid she would come much too early. 8. It always seemed to Sally that she would have enough time to complete the labor of his life. 9. I promised to myself that I would try to forget their days together. 10. She said she chose to come to that university as she would devote her life to teaching children. 11. They hoped they'd be living together. 12. He promised the project would have been finished by the next day. 13. I hoped the movie wouldn't have been going on long when I came.

## THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

---

### **1. Complete the following sentences with the Present Continuous Tense of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. My son (talk) on the phone right now. 2. Victor (do) his homework at the moment. 3. The children (play) in the garden now. 4. Some people (wait) to talk to you. 5. My wife (not listen) to the radio now. 6. Sandra (not drink) tea now. 7. My mother (vacuum) the carpet right now. 8. What book (you / read) nowadays? 9. She (help) me at present. 10. I (wash) my hands at the moment.

## 2. Ask the special questions, using the words from the gaps.

1. The students are doing housework (what). 2. She is going to a shop (where). 3. I am cooking a cake (what). 4. The man is waiting for a bus (what). 5. Alex is wearing jeans (what). 6. Maria is walking in a park (where). 7. You are waiting for them (who). 8. We are eating apples (what). 9. My father is driving a car (what). 10. He is watching TV (what).

## 3. Make the Present Continuous, positive or negative.

1. (he/ walk to the university now). 2. (I /learn English at the moment). 3. (I / not / sleep). 4. (you / play tennis tonight). 5. (we / listen to music). 6. (she / not / work in Spain)...7. (he/ not / wait for the bus). 8. (I / read the newspaper). 9. (we / not / go to the museum tonight). 10. (you / not / read the article).

## 4. Answer the questions.

1. Is he reading? 2. Is she going to a shop? 3. Are they playing? 4. Is Kate crying? 5. Are Sue and Fred waiting for a train? 6. Are you working now? 7. Is she having a shower? 8. Are the students doing housework? 9. Are you listening to music? 10. Are they dancing?

## 5. Put the verbs in the following sentences into the negative form.

1. She is meeting her friend today. 2. She is not walking to gym now. 3. We are playing football at the moment. 4. You are reading a newspaper. 5. I am visiting Lidia tonight. 6. She is drinking coffee now. 7. Alex is working in a bookshop this summer. 8. They are watching a film. 9. We are buying a new car. 10. David is having a party tomorrow.

## 6. What's happening at the moment? Make up true sentences.

*Model: I/ eat – I'm not eating.*

1. I/ learn/ mathematics. 2. The sun/ shine. 3. My brother/sit / on a chair. 4. You /listen /to music. 5. This woman /wear/ dress. 6. The students pass/ an exam/. 6. The children/ play/ in the park. 7. He/repair/the car. 8. She/ have/ dinner.

## 7. Write short answer to the questions.

*E.g.: Are your parents travelling abroad? – Yes, they are / No, they aren't.*

1. Is she wearing a nice dress? 2. Is your father reading a newspaper? 3. Is your friend riding his bike? 4. Is your sister wearing a new dress? 5. Are you playing computer games? 6. Is it snowing now? 7. Is your father reading

a newspaper? 8. Are your grandparents walking in the park? 9. Are your parents sleeping? 10. Are they swimming in the river? 11. Are the children playing basketball in the garden? 12. Is he cleaning his bedroom now?

**8. Fill in the blank spaces with the Present Continuous tense of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. He (fix) my bike in the garage. 2. I (help) Mom in the kitchen. 3. My sister and I (watch) television in our bedroom. 4. They (come) with us to the museum. 5. We (paint) some pictures for Aunt Susan.

**9. Translate into English.**

1. Не входите в аудиторию! Студенты сдают экзамен. 2. Этот профессор читает лекцию сейчас. 3. Не мешайте мне. Я готовлюсь к контрольной работе. 4. О чем вы думаете? 5. Осторожно! Та машина едет с огромной скоростью!

**10. Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it.**

1. What you doing? 2. Sue has breakfast at the moment. 3. They no coming to the cinema this evening. 4. I'm not understanding what you mean. 5. He's driving to work every day. 6. Fred don't like singing. 11. What can you say in these situations? Add a sentence with the Present Continuous.

*Model: A friend calls you in the middle of your favourite film. – Is it important? I'm watching the most interesting film.*

1. A friend is at your flat and suggests going out, but you can see rain outside. I don't want to go out now. Look,...2. A friend phones you at work. – Sorry, I can't talk now. ...3. You want to get off the bus, but the old lady next to you is sitting on your coat. – Excuse me,... 4. A friend of yours wants to discuss the latest news with you, but you've just started to make a report. – Can I talk to you later?... 5. You have been ill, but you're better now. – I'm OK now...

**12. Choose the Present Indefinite or Present Continuous:**

1. (Nelson / come) tonight? 2. (This woman / eat) meat every day? 3. I (work) at the moment. 4. (They / come) Moscow often? 5. She (play) chess now. 6. (You / come) to the museum later? 7. We (not / come) to the party tomorrow. 8. He (not / play) cricket now. 9. (My friend / play) tennis this Monday? 10. They (go) to the country every Sunday. 11. She (not / go) to the cinema very often. 12. You usually (come) late. 13. He normally (eat) dinner at home. 14. (You / study) every day? 15. (They / work) late usually? 16. You

(not / go) out later. 17. I (not / work) tonight. 18. (She / work) at the moment? 19. I (not / drink) coffee very often. 20. Jane (sleep) now.

**13. Complete the sentences. Put in the Present Continuous or Present Indefinite of the verbs in the brackets.**

*Model: I'm writing (I / write) to my parents. I write (I / write) to them every weekend.*

1. (It / snow) outside. 2. (It / come) down quite hard, look. 3. Normally (I / start) work at nine o'clock, but (I / start) at ten this week. 4. We're very busy at the moment. 5. I haven't got a car at the moment, so (I / go) to work on the bus this week. 6. Usually (I / drive) to work. 7. The sun (rise) in the east, remember. It's behind us so (we / travel) west. 8. I'm afraid I have no time to help just now (I / write) a letter. But (I / promise). I'll give you some help later. 9. (I / want) a new car (I / save) up to buy one.

**14. Complete the following sentences with either the Present Indefinite form or the Present Continuous form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. The professor always (give) us interesting articles. 2. The wind (blow) very strongly today. 3. She (like) bananas. 4. Be quiet! We (try) to listen to the teacher. 5. Let's go inside now. It (begin) to rain. 6. He (study) at the university. 7. The mother never (let) the children play in the street when it's dark. 8. I (go) swimming every day. 9. We're trying to catch the ball that (roll) down the hill. 10. My brother (know) a lot about plants and animals.

**15. Complete the following sentences with either the Present Indefinite form or the Present Continuous form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. I (to read) now. 2. He (to sleep) now. 3. We (to drink) tea now. 4. They (to go) to school now. 5. I (not to sleep) now. 6. She (not to drink) tea now. 7. I (to read) every day. 8. I (to sleep) every night. 9. We (to drink) water every morning. 10. They (to go) to the Institute every morning. 11. I (not to sleep) in the daytime. 12. She (not to drink) milk after lunch. 13. We (not to watch) TV now. 14. They (not to eat) now. 15. My mother (not to work) now. 16. You (to work) now? 17. He (to play) now? 18. They (to eat) now? 19. Your sister (to rest) now? 20. What you (to do) now? 21. What you (to read) now? 22. What they (to eat) now? 23. What your brother (to drink) now? 24. We (not to watch) TV in the evening. 25. They (not to eat) at the lesson. 26. My mother (not to work) at the hotel. 27. You (to work) every day? 28. She (to play) in the afternoon? 29. They (to eat) at school? 30. Your brother (to rest)

after work? 31. What you (to do) every morning? 32. What you (to read) after dinner? 33. What they (to eat) at dinner? 34. What your brother (to drink) in the evening?

**16. Complete the following sentences with either the Present Continuous form or the Future Indefinite form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. Do you think it (rain) tomorrow? 2. I can't visit the doctor tomorrow. I (work). 3. I'm sure you (win) this match. 4. What time he (leave) tomorrow? 5. Perhaps, she (visit) Washington one day. 6. I think, I (buy) this coat. 7. Look at the clouds! It (go) to rain! 8. Our friends (have) a party next week. They invite us.

**17. Complete the following sentences with either the Present Indefinite form or the Present Continuous form or the Future Indefinite form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. She (to play) the piano tomorrow. 2. I (not to play) guitar tomorrow. 3. You (to play) football tomorrow? 4. He (to play) tennis every day. 5. He (not to play) cricket every day. 6. He (to play) chess every day? 7. They (to play) computer games now. 8. They (not to play) the violin now. 9. They (to play) hockey now? 10. Nick (to go) to the park now. 11. Nick (to go) to university every day. 12. She (to go) to the gym tomorrow. 13. You (to come) to my place next Sunday? 14. You (to read) this book next week? 15. You (to read) newspapers every day? 16. You (to read) a book now? 17. I (not to see) her tomorrow. 18. What you (to do) tomorrow? 19. What your sister (to do) tomorrow? 20. Where you (to go) next winter? 21. Where you (to go) every morning? 22. Where you (to go) now? 23. Look! Mark (to dance). 24. She (to dance) every day. 25. She (to sing) the songs tomorrow?

**18. Translate into English.**

1. Он читает журналы. 2. Мы не работаем в магазине сегодня. 3. Она смотрит новую передачу по телевизору. 4. Ребенок спит в детской комнате. 5. Анна играет на пианино, она не поет. 6. Не шумите, моя маленькая дочь спит. 7. Мама готовит ужин одна? 8. Я не сплю, я слушаю музыку. 9. Мы не купаемся в море, вода сегодня холодная. 10. Что ты делаешь сейчас? – Я помогаю папе чинить машину. 11. Вы идете в институт? – Нет, мы идем в театр. 12. Что несут эти дети учителю? – Цветы. 13. Это фотография моих детей, Максим играет на гитаре, а Анна поет. 14. А здесь мы танцуем на моем дне рождения.

**19. Complete the following sentences using the appropriate form of the verb using the Present Continuous form.**

1. He (walk) in the park right now (walks/is walking /are walking). 2. I (walk) every day before bed (walk /am walking /walks). 3. I can't help you, I (work) (am working/work/are working). 4. What you (do) here? You are supposed to be at school (you are doing /are you doing /do you do). 5. Look at me, I (talk) to you (am talking/is talking /talk). 6. He (watch) TV a lot these days (watches/am watching/is watching). 7. I always (watch) TV in the evening (am watching/watch/watches). 8. Your career (develop) very quickly (is developing/am developing/ develops). 9. She always (ask) questions, it annoys me (is always asking/always asks/always is asking). 10. (you dine) with us tonight?(Do you dine/Are you dining /Are dining you). 11. I (want) these red shoes so much these days (am wanting/is wanting /want). 12. (you think) about your husband right now?(Are you thinking /Is you thinking/Do you think). 13. (you think) it's a good decision? (Are you thinking/Is you thinking/Do you think). 14. The teachers (talk) about you, listen! (talk/are talking/is talking). 15. He (write) a letter at this moment (writes/am writing/ is writing). 16. She...for Anna near the park (is waiting/waits /is wait/are waiting). 17. Nick...that serial every day (is watch/watches/watching/is watching). 18. I...you to tell me the truth now (want/is wanting/wanting/ are wanting). 19. No, I ... my email at the moment (am not checking/don't check/don't checking/am not check).

**20. Translate into English.**

1. Он сейчас играет на скрипке мелодии. 2. Их сын в это время готовится к экзаменам. 3. Александр сейчас в спортзале. Он занимается настольным теннисом. 4. Ты слышал новости? – Да. Сегодня приезжает президент России. 5. Кевин, приглашаю тебя на вечеринку сегодня вечером.– Спасибо, но сегодня вечером я иду на кинотеатр. 6. Что случилось?– У меня болит зуб. Я сегодня пойду к дантисту. 7. Что ты делаешь сегодня вечером, Вера?– Я буду смотреть вместе с мужем футбольный матч по телевизору. 8. Где дети, Рита?– Они гуляют в парке.

## THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

---

**1. Explain the use of the Past Continuous Tenses.**

1. It was raining when we went out. 2. What were you writing on holidays? – I wasn't writing anything, I was enjoying my time. 4. They were constantly

leaving their cups unwashed! 5. After an hour's sleep she was feeling much better. 6. The teachers were being kind to us. 7. While I was making tea in the kitchen, my husband ate the last piece of cake. 8. Peter was always hanging on the phone! 9. It was December. New Year's Day was coming. 10. He was having a shower at seven o'clock in the evening. 11. The phone always rang when I was cooking breakfast.

## 2. Correct the mistakes.

1. I studied for two years pedagogy. 2. During he was on holiday, he went swimming every day. 3. She broke her leg when she felt down in the street. 4. What did you last night? 5. With 17 years old he went to Germany. 6. She lost her money. 7. They saw Jill last evening. 8. I knew my friend in 2016. 9. They got married five year ago. 10. In 2000 I leaved university and started work.

## 3. Make the sentences negative and interrogative.

1. I was speaking to my sister. 2. Mr. Brown was explaining the meaning of the word to her. 3. Those professors were at the conference. 4. The secretary was copying the names from the list. 5. As I was walking past the boating lake, I saw my friends. 6. He was just sitting on a bench and reading a newspaper. 7. Shewas watchingTV in the afternoon. 8. Iwas readinga bookwhenmy friendknockedat the door.

## 4. Complete the conversation. Put in the Past Continuous forms:

Victor: ... (I / look) for you, David. I'm afraid I've broken this teacup.

David: Oh no! What ... (you / do)?

Victor: ... (I / take) it into the kitchen. I bumped into Frank. ... (he / come) out just as ... (I / go) in.

David: I expect it was your fault. ... (you / not / look) where ... (you/ go).

Victor: Sorry. I'll buy you another one as soon as I have some money.

## 5. Complete the sentences. Put in the Present Continuous, Past Continuous or Present Indefinite, Past Indefinite or Future Indefinite of the verbs in the brackets.

1. Look at these children: they (to skate) very well. 2. You (to skate) last Sunday? – Yes, we (to skate) the whole day last Sunday. We (to skate) again next Sunday. 3. My brother can skate very well. He (to skate) every Sunday. 4. What you (to do) now? – I (to wash) the dishes. 5. What you (to do) at three o'clock yesterday? – I (to have) dinner. 6. You (to have) dinner now?

7. Where your brother (to work)? – He (to work) at an institute. 8. Your grandmother (to sleep) when you (to come) home yesterday? 9. What your brother (to do) tomorrow? 10. I (not to go) to the shop yesterday. I (to go) to the shop tomorrow. 11. Where Kate (to go) when you (to meet) her yesterday? 12. Every day the boss (to enter) the office at nine o'clock. 13. Yesterday the boss (to enter) the office at half past nine. 14. When the secretary (to come) tomorrow? 15. At six o'clock yesterday we (to listen) to a very interesting lecture. 16. When I (to enter) the office, the secretary (to type) some letters. 17. My friend (to ring) me up at eight o'clock yesterday.

### 6. Put in the correct form of the verb:

Kira: I hear the lights ... (go) out in your houses last night.

Laura: Yes, (I / watch) TV when suddenly ... (we / lose) all the power. But ... (it / come) on again after about five minutes.

Sandra: Robert... (come) down the stairs when the lights ... (go) out. He almost ... (fall) over.

Tom: Martin and I ... (play) chess at the time.

Alex: ... (I / work) on the computer. ... (I / lose) a whole hour's work. But this morning ... (I/get) up early and ... (do) it again.

### 7. Work with a partner. Ask each other these questions.

*E.g.: A: Who was the last person to come to class today? – Harry. – What were you doing when Harry came in? – We were talking about the past progressive.*

1. Who was the last person to come to class today? 2. What were you doing when this person came in? 3. Did you arrive before the teacher? 4. If so, what were you doing when the teacher came in? 5. Did you arrive after class began? 6. If so, what was the class doing when you came in? 7. What did you do when you entered the class?

### 8. Choose the proper tense form: the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous.

1. When I (arrived/was arriving) the party was in full swing. Peter (danced/was dancing) with Kate, and Mark and Greg (drank/were drinking) juice. 2. When she (finished/was finishing) the ironing, she (cooked/was cooking)dinner. 3. How fast (did they travel/were they travelling) when their car (had/was having) a puncture. 4. I (took/was taking) a photograph of her while she (ate/was eating) a watermelon. 5. I'm sorry I (woke/was waking) you. What (were you dreaming/did you dream) about? 6. What (did you do/

were you doing) when I (phoned/was phoning) you last night? There was no reply. 7. Sandra found her lost key when she (looked for/was looking) for her passport. 8. Tom (was having/had) a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang. 9. We (looked/were looking) at it attentively but nobody (knew/was knowing) what it was.

### **9. Ask the common questions.**

1. It was raining when I she left the office. 2. It was getting dark now, and the man drove more slowly than ever. 3. I looked at my sister. She was reading a letter. 4. My brother was sitting on the window seat with a book in his hands. 5. I looked into my mother's study. She was no longer working. 6. Kerry, turning from the door, noticed that he was standing upon a letter which lay on the mat.

### **10. Ask alternative questions and give short answers.**

*E.g.: She (play) the guitar/the piano when you came in? – Was she playing the guitar or the piano when you came in? – The piano.*

1. You (read) the book/ (write) the letter when the doorbell rang? 2. Sindy (cross) the road/ (wait) for the bus when she saw the accident? 3. You (have) dinner at home/in a restaurant? 4. His parents (live) in the centre of Riga/on the outskirts when he was a child? 5. It (rain)/ (snow) all day yesterday?

### **11. Ask special questions and give short answers.**

*E.g.: We were writing the test in the lecture hall. – Where were you writing the test?*

1. I was looking for keys when you rang. 2. They were doing 80 miles an hour because they didn't want to be late for the plane. 3. When I entered the classroom, the teacher was writing words on the blackboard and the students were writing them into their exercise books. 4. It was raining when I left the house. 5. He hurt his leg while he was playing football. 6. In June that firm was carrying on negotiations for the purchase of fish. 7. I was working in the library from three till five. 8. She was reading a book at 8 o'clock yesterday. 9. They were writing a test at 11 o'clock yesterday. 10. We were working in our lab at 10 o'clock. 11. He was preparing for the English test when his sister came.

### **12. Ask the tag questions.**

*E.g.: You weren't having a party last weekend, were you?*

1. Nobody was waiting for him when he arrived at the station. 2. My parents were giving me love and emotional support. 3. I wasn't feeling well

when I got up in the morning. 4. We weren't enjoying themselves at that rather boring party. 5. She was always complaining about bad service. 6. After the quarrel they weren't talking to each other for a long time.

**13. Complete the sentences. Put in the Present Continuous or Past Continuous of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. I (to write) a letter now. 2. I (to write) an English exercise at this time yesterday. 3. My little brother (to sleep) now. 4. My little sister (to sleep) at this time yesterday. 5. My friends (not to do) their homework now. They (to play) volley-ball. 6. Fred and Linda (not to do) their homework at seven o'clock yesterday. They (to play) chess. 7. You (to eat) ice-cream now? 8. You (to eat) ice-cream when I rang you up yesterday? 9. What your father (to do) now? 10. What your father (to do) from six till seven yesterday? 11. Why he (to cry) now? 12. Why he (to cry) when I saw him yesterday? 13. He (to read) the whole evening yesterday. 14. She (not to read) now. 15. Now she (to go) to the office. 16. What you (to do) now? – I (to drink) juice. 17. You (to drink) juice at this time yesterday? – No, I (not to drink) juice at this time yesterday, I (to eat) an ice-cream. 18. I am fond of reading. I (to read) the whole evening yesterday, and now I (to read) again. 19. Look! My baby (to play) in the garden. 20. When I went out into the park, the sun (to shine) and birds (to sing) in the trees.

**14. Give a necessary form of the verb.**

1. I was not at the hotel at six o'clock. I (work). 2. The test (be) difficult, and the students (feel) sick. 3. While we (have) a swim, somebody (come) and (take) away our clothes. 4. What you (do) at seven o'clock? 5. It (pour) when I (decide) to go for a walk. 6. When the telephone (ring), I (sleep). 7. When this man (see) me for the first time, he (sell) flowers. 8. What you (do) in this shop? – I (look) for my friends there. 9. I (drop) my keys when I (get) on the bus. 10. The play (be) a success. The people (shout) "Bravo!" 11. Ben (feel) that something strange (happen). 12. Where (be) she when we (look) for him everywhere? – She (play) the piano. 13. When the sun (rise), everybody (be) still sleeping. 14. It (be) a very pleasant evening. The clock (tick), the fire (burn), romantic music (play). 19. When Robert (enter) the room, Linda (type) still the documents. 20. At this time yesterday I (lie) on the sofa and (read) a book.

**15. Choose the Past Continuous or Present Continuous:**

1. Mary (stay) at a seaside hotel on holiday when she first (meet) her husband. 2. The sun (shine) when I (walk) in the street. 3. It (rain) when I

(read) the newspaper. 4. While he (have) lunch the sun (come) out again. 5. Where ... you (live) before you moved here? 6. Who ... you (talk to) on the telephone just now? 7. As Sandra (read) the documents she (notice) many spelling mistakes. 8. While Fred (carve) the meat his wife (lay) the table.

**16. Put the verbs in a certain tense form.**

1. When I (go) to the supermarket, I (see) my uncle. 2. When I (see) my uncle, I (say) "Hello!" 3. While we (talk), a car (run into) a boy on a bike. 4. When we (see) the accident, I (phone) for an ambulance. 5. While I (wait) for the ambulance, a policeman (arrive). 6. When the policeman (arrive), he (ask) us some questions. 7. The ambulance (come), while I (talk) to the policeman. 8. The ambulance (take) the boy to hospital and we (go) for a cup of tea. 9. While we (drink) our tea, we (talk) about the accident.

**17. Use either Past Continuous or Past Simple.**

1. She (go) to bed when suddenly she (hear) a noise. 2. We (sit) down to dinner when the parents (come). 3. Columbus (try) to reach India when he (find) America. 4. We (watch) a television programme when the grandmother (cook) the cake. 5. Kate (meet) the teacher as she (cross) the street. 6. She (suffer) from shock when I (see) her in hospital. 7. Sue made a good recovery and when I last (see) her she (work) as hard as ever.

**18. Use the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following sentences containing as-clauses and while-clauses:**

1. We (to talk) little as we (to go) home. 2. As they (to drink) tea, Tom (to say): "Now tell me about yourself." 3. Her steps (to slow) down as she (to mount) the stairs. 4. My mother (to come) forward as we (to climb) out of the car and (to hold) his hand to me. 5. Betty (to call) up as I (to prepare) to leave the hotel. 6. We (to watch) her as she (to walk) to a chair across the room. 7. He (to look) up as Mark (to come) in. 8. Her wife (to stop) him just as he (to get) into the car. 9. While he (to listen) to music, the door (to open) and his friend (to come) out. 10. Linda (to listen) gravely while I (to complain) about my reading.

**19. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous tense:**

1. I (carry) an open umbrella as it (rain) slightly. I (throw) the umbrella to the ground and (run) away as fast as I could. 2. When he (awake) she (sit) by the window. She (look) at something in the street, but when he (call) her she

(turn) and (smile) at him. 3 Why you (interrupt) me just now? I (have) a very interesting conversation with the professor. 4. As they (walk) along the road they (hear) a car coming from behind them. David (turn) round and (hold) up his hand. The car (stop). 5. When I (arrive) at the station Fred (wait) for me. He (wear) a blue shirt and black shoes. As soon as he (see) me he (wave) and (shout) something, but I couldn't hear what he (say) because everybody (make) such a noise. 6. While the teacher (make) his speech the student suddenly (feel) faint. But someone (bring) him a glass of water and after a few minutes he (be able) to continue. 7. When I (see) her she (paint) the picture. – You (like) it? – She only just (start) when I (see) it, so I couldn't judge. 8. While I (water) the flowers it (begin) to rain. I (put) up my umbrella and (go) on watering.

## 20. Translate the sentences.

1. Я хорошо знаю Париж. Мы жили там девять лет. 2. Вчера он два часа готовился к экзамену. 3. Я подождал ее 20 минут и пошел звонить ей. 4. В субботу мы два часа гуляли в лесу. Когда мы гуляли, мы увидели зайца. 6. Отец все воскресенье работал в саду. Когда он работал в саду, я помогал ему. 7. Он три года занимался спортом, когда учился в школе. 8. Когда они пришли на вечеринку, все танцевали. 9. Концерт шел два часа. Когда мы выходили из зала, мы увидели наших друзей. 10. Вчера я звонила тебе полчаса. Где ты был? – Я гулял в парке. 11. Когда я пришел к маме, она готовила ужин на кухне. 12. Преподаватель экзаменовал меня 30 минут. Я хорошо отвечала, сделала только одну ошибку и получила отличную оценку. 13. Что ты делал вчера, когда выключили свет? – Я принимал душ. А что ты делал? – А я готовился к экзамену по английскому языку. Но я не мог больше читать и сегодня утром я встал очень рано и три часа читал учебник.

## THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

---

### 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Continuous Tense.

*E.g.: I (have) breakfast at 6.00. – I'll be having breakfast at 6.00.*

1. We (arrive) in time for dinner. 2. We (stay) in London for about a couple of weeks. 3. I (travel) all over the country with Adam, one of my closest

friends.4. At 8.00 tomorrow I (work) in the office. 5. My father (watch) TV at 9 o'clock.6. Henry and Berta (have) a good time on their holiday in New York.

**2. Complete the sentences with the negative form of the verbs in brackets.**

*E.g.:Next year they (live) in Turkey. – Next year they won't be living in Spain.*

1. The children (stay) with their parents for the summer holidays.2. At four o'clock on Friday afternoon you (fly) over London.3. We (watch) the sport competition tonight.4. I (work) at home tomorrow – don't call me there.5. Harry (play) chess at 5 o'clock tomorrow afternoon.

**3. Make the sentences negative.**

1. They will be playing tennis at 11 am tomorrow. 2. We'll be having dinner when the film starts. 3. I will be waiting for you. 4. Will she be enjoying her vacations? 5. Don't ring at 8 o'clock. I'll be watching TV. 6. You will be seeing your dentist at 5 o'clock next Thursday.

**4. Make the sentences interrogative.**

1. I will be doing aerobics at 7 o'clock tomorrow evening. 2 They will be cycling tomorrow morning. 3. Robert will be walking his dog at 6 o'clock tomorrow. 4. My mother will be making a cake for our party at 5 o'clock tomorrow. 5. The students will be preparing for the test since 5 o'clock tomorrow. 6. This man will be exercising in the gym from 3 p.m. till 7 p.m. tomorrow. 7. Nancy will be visiting our city from Monday till Sunday. 8. It will be raining all day tomorrow.

**5. What will/won't be happening at this time tomorrow? Write true sentences, positive or negative.**

*E.g.:I/walk in New York. – I won't be walking in New York.– I/talk with some of my friends. – I'll be talking with some of my friends.*

1. My parents/fly over the Atlantic.2. It/snow all day long.3. People/work in their offices and at home.4. I/lie on a beautiful beach.5. I/play computer games. 6. My friend and I/have lunch.

**6. Change these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.**

*E.g.:I (see) him one of these days. – Will you be seeing him one of these days? – Yes, I will. / No, I won't.*

1. We (give) another party at the same time next week. 2. At 9.30 they (watch) a new video film. 3. I (get) ready for his exams. 4. I (have) lunch at this time tomorrow. 5. My father (play) tennis after work.

**7. Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.**

*E.g.: he/study/watch TV at 9 o'clock tomorrow? – Will he be studying or watching TV at 9 o'clock tomorrow? – He'll be studying.*

1. They/rent a flat/live in a hotel during their stay in Rom? 2. your sister/spend/next weekend in town/in the country? 3. Dandy /set out on a trip on Sunday/on Monday? 4. you/have lunch with Rita/by yourself? 5. It/snow/rain tomorrow morning?

**8. Ask questions about the information in italics.**

*E.g.:I'll be writing this article this time tomorrow. – When will you be writing this article?*

1. I will be visiting *my friends* at the weekend. 2. She will be *lying in bed* at this time. 3. *Victor* will be playing that part in the performance on Sunday 4. They'll be going on a sightseeing tour next weekend. 5. Alex will be getting *a lot of money* in his new job. 6. *A lot of people* will be taking part in this sport competition. 7. We'll probably be working late *on Saturday*.

**9. Add the correct tag to these sentences.**

*E.g.:They'll be enjoying themselves at the seaside, won't they?*

1. We'll be attending the meeting at 2.00. 2. Betty and John won't be doing up their flat in summer. 3. Everyone in the office will be having lunch at that time. 4. Have a nice trip! You'll be thinking of me. 5. Mary won't be sitting an exam at 9.00.

**10. Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets. Use the Future Simple or the Future Continuous Tense.**

*E.g.:We (see) them tomorrow. – We (tell) them the news. We'll be seeing them tomorrow. – We'll tell them the news.*

1. Mr Harper is going to stay at home tomorrow. So at 7 p.m. he still (work). 2. What you (do) early on Tuesday night? 3. They (come) round for dinner tomorrow evening. – I (show) them the pictures then. 4. Sue (graduate) in June. After that, she (begin) to work at an electronics firm. 5. You look tired. Sit down. I (make) you a cup of tea. 6. Look! That plane is approaching the airport. It (land) soon.

### 11. Answer the following questions about yourself.

1. What are you doing at the holidays? 2. What will you be doing this time next week? 3. What do you think life will be like in the future? 4. Where are you going next winter? 5. What will you have done by the end of today? 6. How many meals will you have eaten by the end of today?

### 12. Use the Future Continuous Tense instead of the infinitives in brackets.

1. This time next month she (have) a rest in China. 2. I (wait) for you if you come out. 3. She is going to stay outdoors tomorrow because her brother (practice) the piano all day. 4. They (pass) an English exam at 8 a.m. 5. I've bought a new newspaper and I (read) it the whole evening tonight. 6. When the taxi comes they still (pack), I think. 7. Night after night he (sit) in that empty room all alone. 8. Be careful. They (watch) you all the time. 10. Mark is very busy. He (repair) his car the whole morning. 11. It (get) dark in an hour or so. Let's come back home. 12. I don't want to retire. I think I still (work) when I am eighty. 13. Nina is ill. She (stay) in bed for the next week. 14. Klara (watch) TV all day long again.

### 13. Make up your own conclusions using the Future Continuous Tense.

*E.g.: I'm going to listen to music from 7 until 8 o'clock this evening. – So at 7: 30 I will be listening to music.*

1. Tomorrow afternoon he is going to play football from 4 o'clock until 5.30. So at 5 o'clock tomorrow he... 2. I am going to study from 9 o'clock until 10 o'clock this evening. So at 9.30 this evening I... 3. She is going to clean the flat tomorrow. It will take from 5 until 7 o'clock. So at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning... 4. You are going to pass an exam from 9 until 10 this morning. So at 7 o'clock this morning ... 5. He is going to repair his car from 8 until 12 o'clock tonight. So at 11 o'clock tonight he...

### 14. Answer using the Future Continuous Tense:

*Model: – What will you be doing at this time tomorrow (to fly to England) – I'll be flying to England at this time.*

1. Who will you be talking to at 8 o'clock? (the teacher). 2. What'll the son be doing while his mother making the cake? (to play computer games). 3. What work will they be doing the whole day tomorrow? (to paper the walls). 4. Will he be translating a newspaper or reading a book from 7 to 8? (to translate an article). 5. Where will you be living at this time next year? (in Rome). 6. What time will he be passing our house? (at 11 o'clock).

**15. Ask questions using the Future Continuous.**

*E.g.: You want to borrow your friend's car tonight (you / use / your car tonight?) – Will you be using your car tonight?*

1. You want your friend to give Kate a parcel this evening (you / meet / Kate this evening?) 2. You want to use your friend's computer tomorrow morning (you / use / your computer tomorrow morning?) 3. Your sister is going shopping. You want her to buy some food for you (you / pass / the shop when you are in city?).

**16. Put the verbs into the correct form: Future Indefinite or Future Continuous.**

1. Sit down and fasten your seat belt. We ... (take off) in a few minutes. 2. When... (you/go) to the bank to draw some money? 3. Do you think ... (still/work) here in five years' time? 4. I ... (meet) my friends before flying back home. 5. We... (drive) to Moscow next Friday morning. 6. This time next year I ... (write) the letter. 7. I don't think I ... (see) her tonight. 8. In five years' time a permanent space station ... (circle) the moon. 9. They... sail) from Dover, not Folkestone. 10. So you're stopping off in Berlin on your way to Paris. How long ... (you/stay) there? 11. We... (spend) the summer in Sochi.

**17. Put the, verb in brackets into the Present, Past or Future Continuous Tense.**

1. I (to take) a bath now. 2. He (not to laugh) at you. 3. We (to come) here next week. 4. If I (to sleep) when he comes, please, wake me up. 5. What book you (to read) when I came to the library? 6. The whole family (to have) lunch when the telephone rang. 7. Where he (to go) when the rain started? 8. He (to sing) over the radio at 6 o'clock tomorrow. 9. The students will not go with us. They (to have) a lecture at 9 o'clock. 10. What you (to do) from 3 till 4 o'clock tomorrow? 11. The children (to play) when we return home. 12. Look! It is getting dark. It (to rain) in a minute.

**18. Tell each other what you were doing (what you will be doing) at the same time yesterday (tomorrow). Explain the use Future Continuous in the following sentences.**

1. I'll be still working when my friends arrive. 2. This time tomorrow she'll be lying on the beach. 3. My brother will be watching television from eight o'clock till midnight. 4. She will be buttering the bread while her mother is slicing the tomatoes. 5. They'll be arriving at Kirov at 8 o'clock. 6. What will your parents be doing at this time tomorrow? 7. Sue is not coming to the

party as she will be taking her driving test. 8. Why must I take a newspaper?  
-You'll be sitting on the train for hours.

### 19. Translate the sentences.

1. Где ты будешь, когда я приеду? – Я буду писать готовить ужин дома. 2. Чем он будет заниматься завтра? В два часа он будет сидеть в самолете и лететь в Турцию. 3. Присоединяйся к нам. С шести до восьми мы будем играть в настольный теннис. 4. В субботу днем мы будем заниматься покупками. 5. Я буду занята завтра вечером. Я будут встречать своего коллегу из Англии. 6. Пора идти. Родители будут волноваться. 7. Трудно представить, что будет происходить с нами через день или два. – Все будет хорошо. 8. Зачем ты взял зонт Тома? Он же будет искать его завтра утром. 9. Роман устраивает вечеринку в воскресенье, ты идешь? – К сожалению, нет, я в это время буду готовиться к экзамену.

### 20. Translate the sentences.

1. Они не будут играть в футбол на площадке завтра в шесть часов вечера. 2. Вовторник с девяти часов они будут сдавать экзамен по английскому языку. 3. Что ты будешь делать завтра в семь часов вечера? – Я буду готовиться к выступлению на конференции. 4. Какой семинар Вы будете посещать в следующий понедельник в три часа? – Я буду посещать семинар по языкознанию. 5. В это время завтра мы будем лететь в Тайланд. 6. Во сколько завтра у нас будет лекция? – У нас лекция будет проходить с девяти часов утра до десяти часов утра. 6. Вы будете работать всю следующую неделю? – Нет, со следующего четверга я буду отдыхать на море. 7. В следующую субботу в пять часов вечера мои друзья будут принимать участие в соревнованиях по шахматам. 8. Мы будем украшать зал к новомуднему празднику завтра в десять часов утра.

## THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

---

### 1. Make general questions. Add some information.

*Model: – Has Dick got up yet? – Yes, he has. He is having breakfast now.  
– Has Richard got up yet? – No, he hasn't. He is still sleeping.*

1. Linda / do his homework / play the guitar; 2. Tom / have dinner / watch TV; 3. Victor / go home / play tennis; 4. you / find your glasses / look for them; 5. my mother/ dust the furniture / clean the carpet; 6. The secretary/ finish typing / file the documents; 7. you / write your article / look through my notes; 8. She / tidy up their room / watch TV.

**2. Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.**

1. She/ read much / little / lately? 2. You / drink tea / coffee / today? 3. our boss / has a holiday / a business trip / this year? 4. They / see any good performances / plays / recently? 5. You / be / to China or France / several times? 6. Sue/ swim / play chess much / lately? 7. John/ pass / fail the exam? 8. She / work hard / little / this week? 9. My friend / find / loose / a job lately? 10. The team / win / loose / the game? 11. You / have / English / French / today?

**3. Express solidarity.**

*Model: – I have already translated the text. And you? – So have I. – Mike hasn't come yet. And Nancy? – Neither has Nancy.*

1. Fred has visited Moscow twice. And Greg? 2. Helen hasn't done the work yet. And Sandra? 3. I haven't heard from Boris this week. And you? 4. David has never been to Russia. And Jack? 5. We have already had lunch. And your friends? 6. I have already written the test. And you? 7. Anna hasn't found the key yet. And Nina? 8. They have just left. And Linda? 9. Maria has wanted to become an actress since her childhood. And Helen? 10. I have never considered Ben a devoted friend. And you?

**4. Put questions to the underlined words.**

1. Up to now I (visit) ten countries. 2. This secretary (type) five letters so far. 3. She never (eat) pineapple. 5. The teacher never (speak) to the students so unfriendly before. 5. My mother (work) here since 1998. 6. The Browns (be) to Sweden two times this year. 7. My father (drive) the same car for 20 years. 8. I (know) them for many years. 9. She just (fly) from Paris. 10. Ronald (become) a director recently. 11. They (buy) a modern computer recently. 12. I (quarrel) with my sister today. 13. Donald (stay) with them long enough to discover all their little secrets. 14. The weather (change) for the best since Friday. 15. Your chances (improve) lately.

**5. Ask disjunctive questions.**

1. You never (be) to the Sochi, ... you? 2. Sue already (tell) everything, ... she? 3. Peter just (come), ... he? 4. Donald (not, see) Linda today, ... he?

5. The Smiths ... (be) married for eleven years, ... they? 6. Fred (not, invite) you for the party yet, ... he? 7. Jane (fall) ill, ... she? 8. Pat (not, travel) to Poland yet, ... he?

### **6. Make the sentences negative.**

1. I have already written the test. – 2. My sister has done her homework this evening. – 3. They have already watched this film. 4. I have never seen this woman. 5. My friends have just come back home. 6. She has left her book at home this morning. 7. We have made up our mind. 8. She has been married. 9. He has fixed his bike. 10. They have bought a new magazine. 11. My sister has watered the plants. 12. They have forgotten the password. 13. My friend has broken his computer. 14. We have missed the train. 15. They have learnt a new rule. 16. She has cleaned her room. 17. He has got a good mark. 18. They have translated the text. 19. You have done it right. 20. Our teacher has explained a new rule. 21. We have missed the train. 22. They have lost the money.

### **7. Make the sentences interrogative.**

1. Jack has washed the dog. 2. Father has already cleaned his car. 3. Mr Snowdon has made a speech at the conference. 4. Granny has bought me some cakes. 5. They have painted their old house. 6. Liz has bought some flowers. 7. My sister has just cooked breakfast for the family. 8. The cat has already eaten fish. 9. Mrs Gracy have gone to London. 10. I have never been to India. 11. She has just broken a vase. 12. We have cleaned the room. 13. Chris has phoned his friend. 14. The train has just arrived. 15. It has just started to rain. 16. Kelly has gone to America. 17. We have left our books to school. 18. The street has changed a lot. 19. You have worked here for a long time. 20. Mandy has been to Greece.

### **8. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Tense or Present Continuous Tense.**

1. What he (do) here? – He (write) a letter to his parents. 2. Who (write) the sentences yet? – Greg (do) already. 3. What language you (study)? – Now I (study) French, but I (learn) three foreign languages so far. 4. The students (learn) already a lot of English words. At present they (learn) poems. 5. What rule the teacher (teach) them now? – She (teach) just them the Active Voice and now she (teach) them the Passive Voice. 6. You (find) your key? – No, not yet. I (look) for it everywhere. 7. What they (talk) about? – They (discuss) the news. 8. It (stop) raining yet? – Yes, the sun (shine).

9. What you (drink)? – Tea. Will you join? – With pleasure. I (drink, not) tea today. 10. Are you busy now? – Yes, I (have) my English. – And what about Pedagogy? – I (finish) already it. 11. Victor (read) the article yet? – No, he (read) just now. 12. You (hear) the weather forecast? – Yes, it's nice.

### **9. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Tense or Past Indefinite Tense.**

1. I already (to do) my homework. Now I can go for a walk. 2. I (to do) my homework yesterday. 3. He just (to come) home. 4. He (to come) home a minute ago. 5. Nick (to play) football yesterday. 6. She already (to come) from school. Now she is doing her homework. 7. You (to book) tickets? – Yes, I (to book) them several days ago. 8. I (to read) this book last year. 9. I'm sorry. I (not to do) my homework. 10. They (not yet to come) from the south. 11. He just (to finish) his work. 12. The rain (to stop) but a cold wind is still blowing. 13. What books you (to read) when you (to live) in the country? 14. We already (to solve) the problem. 15. He (to be) ill last week, but now he (to recover). 16. I (not clean) my football boots. 17. They (not start) their meal. I (not do) my homework. 18. He (not win) all his matches this year. 19. My brother and I (not see) any films this week. 20. It's my birthday party today. I (not invite) many people. 21. He (not wash) his hands. They're very dirty. 22. Vince (make) a list of jobs for his project. It's on his wall now. 23. He (make) the list on Monday. 24. He(write) a letter to the local newspaper, but he hasn't posted it yet. 25. He (write) a letter to the editor on Wednesday. 26. He (take) some photographs on Thursday afternoon. 27. He (talk) to his Geography teacher on Friday. 28. 'Where's Vince now?' 'He (go) to the library and he isn't back yet.' 29. He (go) to the library on Saturday morning, too. 30. He (start) his project on Sunday, but he (not finish) yet. 31. My friend is a writer. She (write) many books. 32. We (not/have) a holiday last year. 33. (you/see) Alan last week? 34. I (play) tennis yesterday afternoon. 35. What time (you/go) to bed last night? 36. (you/ever/be) to the United States? 37. My hair is clean. I (wash) it. 38. I (wash) my hair before breakfast this morning. 39. When I was a child, I not/like) sport. 40. Kathy loves travelling. She (visit) many countries. 41. John works in a bookshop. He(work) there for three years. 42. Last year we (go) to Finland for a holiday. We (stay) there for three weeks.

### **10. Translate the sentences.**

1. Она уже выполнила домашнее задание. 2. Они только что объявили все новости. 3. Студенты сдали экзамены сегодня. 4. Вы уже на-

писали письмо? 5. Марта только что проветрила комнату. 6. Я прочитала сегодня новую книгу. 7. Она уже помогла маме по дому. 8. Этим утром дети разделили домашние обязанности. 9. Дима еще не взял конспекты лекций. 10. Я навестила своих родственников сегодня. 11. Она только что разбила вазу. 12. Она уже умылась. 13. Мы уже позавтракали. 14. Они еще не обсудили все проблемы. 15. Вы уже сдали экзамен? 16. Юля проветрила сегодня комнату, не так ли? 17. Дети только что вернулись домой. 18. Наш начальник уже разговаривал с Вами? 19. Ты уже был в Китае, не так ли? 20. Мой муж сегодня не брился. 21. Они уже закончили работу? 22. Все уже проснулись. 23. Вы смотрели вчера новости? 24. Ты уже купил компьютер? 25. Я посадил дерево, когда был маленьким. 26. Мой зуб сломался, когда я грыз орех. 27. Таня уже пришла. 28. Я только что вымыла посуду. 29. Дочь только что убрала в комнате.

**11. Choose the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite using the adverbs: already, just, yet, ever, today yesterday, last week, this morning ( week, month) years ago, never, the first time.**

1. The police (arrest) a man. 2. Mike can't find his key. He (lose) it. 3. Yesterday we (go) to the theatre. 4. I (read) the book when I was a child. 5. I (work) very hard this term. 6. "... you (pass) your driving test?" – Not yet. 7. When ... it (begin) snowing? – About an hour ago. 8. I (not see) Tom this morning. 9. He (read) a newspaper yesterday but he (not read) it today. 10. I (not eat) any fruit today. 11. The painter (paint) a lot of pictures last year. 12. They (plant) just an apple tree. 13. You (meet) him last week? 14. You (meet) him today? 15. He (write) to him last month. 16. They already (accept) a new plan.

**12. Match the sentence and adverbs.**

1. She is watching TV (usually / now / just). 2. He has watched TV (usually / now / just). 3. She watches TV (usually / now / just). 4. We went to him (yesterday / every day / already). 5. He was watching TV (last week / at this time / at that time). 6. You will watch TV (often / soon / at 2 a.m. tomorrow). 7. He'll be reading it (now / / soon / at 2 a.m. tomorrow).

**13. Choose the correct form of the verb.**

1. Usually he... up at 6 a.m. (got / is getting / gets / has got). 2. Serge...this morning (*shave / has shaved / shaved / is shaving*). 3. Anna ... exams at this moment (*pass / has passed / is passing / was passing*). 4. Kate often ... her

teeth in the morning (*cleans / have cleaned / is cleaning / clean*). 5. We ... about the house last week (*have helped / helped / was helping / will help*). 6. I just ... the room (*dusted / am dusting / has dusted / have dusted*). 7. My parents ... a lot of problems right now (*discuss / are discussing / have discussed / were discussing*). 8. Helene often ... late on the lesson (*has been / am / is being / is*). 9. Mike ... a new book at 4 p.m. yesterday (*read / has read / was reading / had read*).

**14. Match the questions on the left with the correct answer on the right.**

Has he finished university yet?	A) No, he hasn't. He's still talking.
Have you eaten breakfast yet?	B) No, I haven't. My wife's still reading it.
Have they gotten married yet?	C) No, he hasn't graduated yet.
Has the president finished speaking yet?	D) No it hasn't. The teacher isn't here yet.
Has Mary watered the plants yet?	E) No, they haven't finished yet.
Has the doctor seen you yet?	F) No, they haven't. They're still engaged.
Has the sun come out yet?	G) No, she hasn't. They are still dry.
Have they finished their homework yet?	H) No, I haven't. I'll eat in a few minutes.
Has the class begun yet?	I) No, he hasn't. He is with another patient.
Have you read the paper yet?	J) No, it hasn't. It's still raining.

**15. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Tense or Past Indefinite Tense.**

Once Mrs Smith left her 5-year-old son at her neighbors' for the whole day, 'cause she had to be out. In the evening she comes after him, and has the following conversation with the neighbor.

Neighbour (Mrs Brown): Well... I can't say I'm much satisfied with Tommy's behaviour.

Mrs Smith: Why?

Mrs B.:He (to break) my husband's favourite cup.

Mrs S.: Oh!.. How (it, to happen)?

Mrs B.: I (to tell) him not to take it, but he (to take) it anyway. Sure enough, he (to drop) it and (to smash) it.

Mrs S.; I'm so sorry... I hope he (not, to do) anything else.

Mrs B.: Oh yes. He (to spill) ink onto the carpet.

Mrs S.: But why (you, to give) him the ink?

Mrs B.: I?! I most certainly (not, to give) him any ink. He (to open) the drawer, (to find) the inkpot and (to start) fooling around with it.

Mrs S.: But where (to be) you?

Mrs B.: I (to be) in the kitchen. When I (to come) back to the room, I (to see) the stain, and immediately (to take) the inkpot away from him. But it (to be) too late.

Mrs S.: And... What else (he, to do)?

Mrs B.: He (to eat) all my shoe-polish. Just to think that I (to cook) such lovely dinner, and he (to prefer) shoe-polish!

Mrs S. (terrified): What?.. What (you, to say)?

Mrs B.: (patiently): He – (to eat) – all my shoe-polish. But don't worry, he (not, to eat) much: there wasn't too much left. Anyway, he (to eat) it a long time ago, and nothing (to happen) yet.

Mrs S.: (you, to call) the doctor?

Mrs B.: No. There isn't anything wrong with the young bandit. Nothing can harm such children. I only think you have to pay me for the cup he (to break), the carpet he (to spoil) and the shoe-polish he (to waste).

### **16. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Tense, Past Indefinite Tense or Present Indefinite Tense.**

1. "Do you know this man?" "Yes, I (to know) him well. I (to know him) since I was born, that is, I (to know) him all my life."

2. "This winter is unusually warm. We (to have) no snow since December." "No, that's not right. We (to have) snow on the 3rd of January."

3. "I see, you're still married to Jason. How long (you, to be) married?" "Let me count. I (to marry) Jason in 1976... Gee, we (to be) married for 20 years!"

4. "Oh my, what a dress! When (you, to buy) it?" "A week ago. Actually, I (not, to buy) it: John (to give) me this dress as a present. It was a big mistake: for all this week I (to be) angry with him and I don't think we'll make it up soon." "You mean, you (to be) angry with him since he (to buy) this dress?" "Of course. I am not going to talk to him again until he buys something better."

### **17. Fill in the gaps with *since* or *for*.**

1. Boris: How long have you known John? Alex: I've known him since we were at school.

2. Sandra: How long have you worn contact lenses? Emma: I've worn them ... five years.

3. Jane: How long have you and Bob lived in France?

Tina: We've lived here ...over ten years now.

4. Alex: I'm sorry I'm late. How long have you been here?

Ted: I've been here ...5 o'clock.

5. Sue: How long have you had this dress?

Anna: I've had it ...Christmas.

6. John: How long have you been in Asia?

Mark: I've been in Asia ...seven years.

7. Chris: How long have you worked at this school?

Tom: I've worked at this school ...1986.

8. Boris: How long have you known Tom?

Nina: I've known him... five years.

9. Greg: When did you last go to America?

Anna: I haven't been to America ...July, 1998.

### 18. Fill in the gaps with *since* or *for*.

1. I've known him ...we were at school. 2. Kate has borrowed Tom's tennis racket ...3 months. 3. I have had this bicycle... 5 years. 4. I haven't seen him ... Monday. 5. She has worn this dress ...a long time. 6. Kenny Denton has played for Liverpool ...1982. 7. I've worked at this school ...two years. 8. I haven't been to America...July, 1998. 9. Mr Pitt has been in hospital ...May. 10. Nobody has seen him...last week. 11. He has been under water ...half an hour. 12. She has driven the same car ...1975. 13. He hasn't eaten anything ... twenty-four hours. 14. Jane has kept Kate's camera ... 3 weeks. 15. Things have changed ... I was a girl.

### 19. Translate into English, using the Present Perfect or Past indefinite.

1. Вы написали контрольную работу? Покажите мне ее. 2. Она написала последнюю контрольную работу без ошибок. 3. Я давно видела эту пьесу. Я уже забыла ее. 4. Я давно с ней познакомилась. 5. Я, давно ее не видела. 6. Я давно пришла сюда. Я здесь с девяти часов. 7. Я только что видела Джона. Он недавно приехал из Нью-Йорка. 8. Я не слышала вашего вопроса. 9. Что вы сказали? 10. Я не слышала, что вы сказали. 11. Хотелось бы знать, куда она положила мои книги. 12. Когда вы начали читать эту книгу? – Мы начали читать ее на прошлой неделе. 13. Я рад, если вы это поняли. 14. "Давно вы приехали? Видели вы его?"... – "Я вчера приехала. Я видела дядю и говорила с ним". 15. Месяца три спустя он уехал в Грузию. С тех пор мы не встречались.

### 20. Translate into English, using the Present Indefinite or Present Perfect.

1. Если он об этом узнает, он придет в ярость. 2. Я не смогу вам дать определенного ответа, пока не поговорю с главным инженером. 3. Мы

выедем в пять часов, если дождь к этому времени перестанет. 4. Я переведу предложение после того, как проанализирую его. 5. Я приду после того, как закончу работу. 6. Он поедет на юг, как только защитит диссертацию. 7. Я дам вам эту книгу после того, как прочту ее. 8. Как только мы решим этот вопрос, я вам позвоню. 9. Я умру, если с тобой что-нибудь случится. 10. Если хотите, давайте рисовать, пока еще не совсем стемнело. 11. Как только он придет, я заставлю его все объяснить. 12. Я подожду, пока он уйдет.

## THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

---

### 1. Make the sentences interrogative.

1. I had not been at that theatre before today. 2. He hadn't had time to explain his side of the story. 3. We hadn't ever gone to Saint-Petersburg. 4. My friends had never gone to the Egypt either. 5. She sold the book that I had given to her. 6. We reached the station, before it had become dark. 7. After she had cried, she felt better. 8. When (=after) they had gone, he began to work. They had sailed away when the telegram arrived. He had scarcely shaken our hands when the phone rang.

### 2. Answer the following questions and give short answers.

1. What had Anna said that made Alex so angry? 2. Why had you agreed to work for that salary? 3. How much had he drunk before you got to him? 4. John had known about the cancer for a couple of years, hadn't he? 5. They had been in business together, hadn't they? 6. Jane hadn't spoken to you about it, had she? 7. They had never eaten a meal, had they? 8. Had you cleaned up the mess by the time they came home?

### 3. Make the sentences negative.

1. After I had finished my work, I went to dinner. 2. She washed the floor when the painter had gone. 3. Henry had known about it for a while. 4. We didn't say anything until the teacher had finished talking. 5. Before they knew it, she had run out the door. 6. By the time Fred phoned Kate, she had found someone new. 7. By the time Victor got to the party, everyone had gone home. 8. Everyone had gone home by the time David had got to the

party. 9. I had had enough of his complaining. After I'd used the phone, I paid the bill. 10. It'd happened so quickly, I didn't notice.

**4. Change these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.**

*E.g.: I **had cleaned** up the mess by the time they came home. – **Had you cleaned** up the mess by the time they came home? – Yes, I **had**. / No, I **hadn't**.*

1. I had cleaned it off the door. 2. They had read the instructions before they switched on the mobile phone. 3. The girl had learned the new words before she texted her friend. 4. They had rung the office before they drove away. 5. Lucy had done before she turned on the TV. 6. He had updated the software before he switched off the computer. 7. She had found before she ran away. 8. Tom had cut the onions before he hurried to the window.

**5. Change these sentences into special questions.**

1. He had lived in America before we went to America. 2. You had played inside the house. 3. He had come back from England. 4. You had done before I met the client. 5. I had not done anything before the match started. 6. As soon as we had completed our project, we went to coffee shop. 7. She had worked for that company last year.

**6. Add the correct tag to these sentences.**

*E.g.: You had given this exam last year, **hadn't you?***

1. I had gone to the market. 2. She had done this task. 3. She had not read news paper. 4. Those girls had not basketball. 5. We had played cricket when you reached the ground. 6. Teacher had taught the lesson before I entered into the classroom. 7. Jack complained about his car because he had lost it. 8. I had not worked in the company before you joined.

**7. Explain the use of the Past Perfect tense. Translate into Russian.**

1. Children had cleaned the room by 7 p.m. 2. My sister had gone away by the time I called her. 3. I couldn't find the magazine that he had lent me. 4. After my son had told me his story, he felt better. 5. Before I came back, my husband had already made dinner. 6. When she sang a song her boyfriend had left the hall. 7. Mary said she had bought the apples the day before yesterday. 8. Alice asked if I had ever been to London.

**8. Correct the mistakes.**

1. He has written a letter to the principal. 2. They have informed the hostel warden. 3. He had completed his work. 4. They had receive a cash

prize. 5. It has creates trouble in the past. 6. We had gone to New York. 7. They have leave their house a couple of years back. 8. The bird had flew before I saw it. 9. The jury had convinced the judge. 10. People from different backgrounds has join hands to fight for their freedom. 11. The man had evoked suspicion. 12. People have given him a warm welcome. 13. Cat had drank all the milk. 14. We had driven quite fast from the place. 15. They have earning enough for a living.

### 9. Translate the sentences.

1. When Fred came home, Linda *had* already *cooked* dinner. The guests *had arrived* too. 2. Nina was late for school. She *had overslept*. 3. A man waved at Flora but she did not recognize him. She *had never seen* him before. 4. Tom and Sue found that the fire *had started* in the flat. They called a fire brigade. 5. Kate could not open the door because she *had lost* the key, so she called her husband for help. 6. We missed the plane. Our car *had broken* down on our way to the airport so we *had to wait* for another flight. 7. I didn't go to the theatre last night because I *had seen* the play before.

### 10. Use the Past Perfect Tense instead of the infinitives in brackets.

1. By 9 o'clock I (pack) my suitcase and was ready to start. 2. Nina wasn't at home when I arrived. She just (go) out. 3. By the time we got home everybody already (go) to bed. 4. Mark looked happy. He (find) his keys. 5. She knew the actor well. She (see) him in many plays. 6. My mother was busy in the kitchen. She (not cook) the dinner yet. 7. My friend told me he (work) in Moscow and Saint-Petersburg. 8. This writer (finished) his new novel by the end of the year. 9. I thought that my brother (not come) home yet. 10. Ronald (return) from the cinema by 6 o'clock. 11. Yesterday my sister found the book which she (lose) in summer. 12. My parents were glad to hear that I (pass) all my exams.

### 11. Use the Past Perfect tense or Past Indefinite tense of the infinitives in brackets.

1. They (eat) everything by the time I (arrive) at the cafe. 2. Last night she (come) home at half past nine. She (have) a bath and then she (go) to bed. 3. Nobody (come) to the meeting because Henry (forget) to tell people about it. 4. When the police (arrive), the car (go). 5. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody (go) to bed. 6. All the garages (close) by the time they (cross) the border. 7. Sue (try) telephoning Nina several times but she (leave) the city. 8. When they were on holiday, the weather (be)

awful. 9. The bus (go) when I (look) into the street. 10. You already (leave) when the trouble (start). 11. I arrived at the cinema late. The film already (begin). 12. Linda already (go) when the professor (call). 13. Jane (not come) to the party as she (leave) for Kirov the day before. 14. He (speak) a language we never (hear) before.

**12. Put the verbs in brackets into the gaps in the correct tense Past Perfect or Past Indefinite tense.**

*E.g.: Pat (to live) in London before he (to move) to Rome. – Pat had lived in London before he moved to Rome.*

1. After Eric (to spend) his holiday in England he (to want) to learn English. 2. Jane (to phone) Victor at work before she (to leave) for her trip. 3. Ann (to turn on) the radio after she (to wash) the dishes. 4. When we (to arrive) the match already (to start). 5. After my sister (to come) home she (to feed) the cat. 6. Before Betty (to sing) a song she (to play) the guitar. 7. The woman (to watch) TV after the children (to go) to bed. 8. After Tom (to make) breakfast he (to phone) his friend. 9. I (to be) very tired because I (to study) too much. 10. I (to ride) my bike before I (to meet) my friends. 11. The parents had already eaten when I (come) home. 12. Last year Jane (pass) all her exams. 13. When they (get) to the airport they discovered they had forgotten their passports. 14. Sofia went to the library, then she (buy) some milk and went home. 15. I opened my handbag to find that I (forget) my credit card. 16. When we (arrive) at the station, the train had already left. 17. We got home to find that someone (break) into the house. 18. Gred opened the fridge to find that someone (eat) all his chocolate. 19. I had known my wife for ten years when we (get) married. 20. Julie was very pleased to see that Tom (clean) the kitchen. 21. It (rain) all summer, so the grass was completely dead. 22. When he (arrive) at the party, John had just left.

**13. Write the sentences, putting one verb in each sentence into the Past Indefinite, and the other verb into the Past Perfect.**

1. When the police (arrive), the car (go). – When the police arrived, the car had gone. 2. When I (get) to the shop, it (close). 3. They (eat) everything by the time I (arrive) at the party. 4. When we (leave) the beach, the rain (already start). 5. I (try) telephoning her several times but she (leave the country). 6. When I (find) my purse, someone (take) the money out of it. 7. The car (go) when I (look) into the street. 8. All the garages (close) by the time we (cross) the border. 9. (You already leave) when the trouble (start)? 10. The post (not arrive) when I (leave) the house this morning.

**14. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Indefinite or Past Perfect tense.**

I sat (sit) outside the office waiting for the interview. 2. I (feel) so nervous that I (not know) what to do with myself. 3. The woman who (go in) before me (be) in there for nearly an hour. I (feel) sure that she (already get) the job. The problem (be) that I (want) this job so much. It (mean) everything to me. I (think) about it such a lot before the day of the interview. I (imagine) myself performing brilliantly at the interview and being offered the job immediately. But now here I (be) feeling terrible. I (cannot remember) all those things I (plan) to say. At the moment, I (almost decide) to get up and leave. But no – I (have to do) this. I (spend) so much time thinking about that I (cannot give up) like that. My hands (be) hot and sticky and my mouth (feel) dry. Finally the door of the office (open). The woman who (go in) an hour earlier (come out) looking very pleased with herself. She (smile) sympathetically at me. At that moment I (hate) her. The managing director then (appear) at the office door. 'Would you like to come in now? I'm sorry to have kept you waiting'. I (suddenly wish) that I (go) home after all.

**15. Put the verbs into the correct form Past Indefinite or Past Perfect.**

1. When she (hear) the noise, she turned to see what it was. 2. When I saw her, I knew we (never meet) before. 3. When I looked at the lorry, I could see that somebody (drive) into the back of it. 4. The movie (start already) when we arrived to the cinema. 5. The doctor examined her leg and (find) that she had broken it. 6. I was hungry because I (not eat) since breakfast. 7. I was frightened because the police (come) for my brother. 8. I was feeling very thirsty because I (drink) too much alcohol the night before. 9. I told him twice that I (not know) him. 10. I told him I didn't know who (steal) his pen. 11. I paid for the window because my son (break) it. 12. I felt really stupid because I (make) a lot of mistakes. 13. I couldn't get in because I (lose) my keys. 14. I (write) a long letter to my mother yesterday. 15. He started to read the newspaper he (buy) an hour ago. 16. After she (finish) breakfast, she left the house.

**16. Open the brackets using the verbs in the Past Indefinite the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect Tenses.**

1. The ambulance (to arrive) five minutes after you (to leave) the house. 2. The doctor (to understand) that the patients (to wait) for him. 3. Though the man (to undergo) the course of treatment he (not to feel) better. 4. She (to graduate from) this Medical college 5 years ago. 5. It (to rain) hard last

morning when I (to go) out to see my sick friend. 6. We (to thank) the doctor for what he (to do) for us. 7. While the doctor (to examine) me the nurse (to fill in) my patient's card. 8. Before she (to enter) the Institute, she (to work) as a nurse. 9. By the time mother (to come) home my temperature (to become) normal. 10. No sooner the nurse (to give) me an injection than I (to feel) better. 11. Yesterday the doctor (to put) her on a sick-leave as her condition (to be) rather bad. 12. When the nurse (to return), I already (to take) my temperature. 13. Sentences are given in the simple past tense. Change them into the present perfect. 14. In some cases, you will need to change or remove the time expression.

**17. Make up the sentences like in the example:**

*E.g.: Henry finished the work. Then he went out. – Henry went out after he had finished his work.*

1. She did all the homework. Then she went for a walk. 2. The bell rang. Then the students entered the classroom. 3. Sally spent all the money in her purse. Then she left the shop. 4. The clock struck nine. Then Jack woke up. 5. Andrew saved some money. Then he got married. 6. He lost all his money. Then he stopped playing cards. 7. I read the newspaper from the beginning to the end. Then I went to sleep. 8. The sun set. Then the farmers stopped working. 9. We answered all the questions. Then we left home. 10. Little Marie said "Please". Then I gave her some chocolate.

**18. Translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the use of tense-aspect forms.**

1. Мы проработали вместе уже много лет, и я фактически мало знаю о тебе. 2. Когда мы подошли к тому месту, где он уронил кольцо, он остановился. 3. Тебе нравится готовить? – Я люблю это. Это одно из моих хобби уже много лет. 4. Папа всегда называл меня Катя. 5. Они возвращаются, я полагаю, они остановятся в гостинице на этот раз. 6. Она заперлась и не сойдет вниз, пока они не уйдут. 7. Я не знаю имена всех в деревне. Я живу здесь всю свою жизнь. 8. Я готовила обед, в то время как она прибиралась в комнате. 9. Не успели они войти в дом, как разразилась буря. 10. Я решила не идти на выставку. Я пойду сегодня в библиотеку. 11. Я уже три месяца не меняла книги. 12. Я почти ни разу не поел как следует, как приехал сюда. 13. Он не придет. Я только что разговаривал с ним по телефону. 14. Филипп отнес свой чемодан в вагон и курил на перроне. 15. Они никогда не танцевали прежде вместе. 16. Кто открыл Австралию?

### 19. Translate into English using Past Perfect Tense:

1. Они обсуждали новости, которые только что получили. 2. Она приготовила все к пяти часам и ждала гостей. 3. Секретарь сообщил, что отправил факс в Нью-Йорк. 4. Он сожалел, что отказался от приглашения. 5. Когда мы пришли в театр, спектакль уже начался. 6. Я думала о том, что он мне рассказал. 7. Мальчишки перестали играть в футбол и медленно шли домой. 8. Мы были удивлены, что он получил эту работу. 9. Он сказал, что только что вернулся из Китая. 10. Дети потеряли собаку и искали ее в саду.

### 20. Translate into English.

1. Он не пришел на концерт, потому что мы его не пригласили. 2. К тому времени, как мы собирались уходить из дома, дождь прекратился. 3. Когда он пришел, урок уже начался. 4. Он стал сильнее после того, как много плавал летом. 5. Она дала мне письмо только после того, как я сказал ей свое имя. 6. Я понял, что уже читал эту книгу до того, как я прочитал ее до конца. 7. Когда я вошел в класс, учитель уже закрыл журнал и объяснял новое правило. 8. Он сказал, что не видел своего друга два дня и думает, что тот заболел. Она продала книгу, которую я ей подарил. Где ты работал, до того как поступил в институт? Мы пришли на станцию еще до того как стемнело. После того как она заплакала, ее стало лучше. Они уже отплыли, когда пришла телеграмма. После того как они ушли, он начал работать. Едва он успел пожать нам руки, зазвонил телефон.

## THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

---

### 1. Explain the use of the Future Perfect Tense. Translate into Russian.

1. By ten they will have gone; come earlier, if you can. 2. The plane will have taken off when we get to the airport. 3. If you come at five I'll have translated the article. 4. Will you have finished the washing-up by the time the film begins? 5. By that time he will have got your letter, don't phone him. 6. She's leaving on Saturday, but I think she will have made all her purchases by then. 7. He must give the book back next Tuesday, but he will have read it long before that day. 8. We won't have written the test by the time the teacher comes.

## 2. Make the sentences interrogative.

1. By the time he graduates, he will have completed five years of study.
2. The snow will have stopped by April.
3. We will have returned home by five o'clock.
4. By tomorrow, their life will have changed completely.
5. We are on vacation. So by the time we get back, we will have rested and relaxed.
6. Her heel will have fully healed by the summer.
7. By next month, you will have received your promotion.
8. By the time he wakes up, we will have prepared lunch for everyone.

## 3. Change these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.

*E.g.: By the time you look for me, I will have gone. – Will I have gone by the time you look for me? – Yes, I **will**. / No, I **won't**.*

1. I will have received the courier by tonight.
2. He will have decided on the issue when you call him.
3. It will have deleted the files automatically.
4. She will have described the incident before you can speak.
5. Before he gets ready for office, she will have prepared the lunch.
6. Next Monday we will have been married for ten years.
7. Tomorrow Justin will have been single for a whole week.
8. In September I will have lived here for eight years.
9. Lucy will have been sick for two weeks tomorrow.
10. Next week you will have had this car for twenty five years!

## 4. Make the sentences negative.

1. Jack will have finished his homework by the time his mother gets home.
2. She will have gotten ready by the time they leave the house.
3. Laura will have cleaned out the apartment before she gives back the key.
4. By the time I get home, Sue will have cooked dinner for both of us.
5. The robbers will have taken all the money by the time anyone arrives.
6. By the time he comes we'll have completed the task ourselves.
7. He'll have guessed the crossword puzzle by the time the boss comes back.
8. She'll have taken up something else by the summer.

## 5. Answer the following questions and give short answers.

1. Will they have flown to meet the president?
2. Will the train have arrived by the time we reach the station?
3. Will he have left before you arrive?
4. Will you have learnt a lot of new words and word combinations by 10.00?
5. Will he have called you by 7.00 in the evening?
6. What will he have done by 11.30 on Sunday?
7. Will she have read up for her exam by 14.30 on Tuesday?
8. Will you have eaten lunch already when we arrive?
9. Will they have finished decorating the float before the parade?

### 6. Change these sentences into special questions.

1. I will have received the letter by Thursday. 2. They will have gone to China by day after tomorrow. 3. Phone me after 8 o'clock. We will have finished dinner by then. 4. We will have gone for the gathering. 5. It will have done a full circle by the time anyone even notices. 6. They will have flown to meet the minister. 7. The principal will have rejected the application. 8. I will have left before you arrive. 9. The authorities will have dealt with the miscreants. 10. She will have called you by 5:00 in the evening.

### 7. Add the correct tag to these sentences.

*E.g.: By eleven you will have given this exam by the end of the day, won't you?*

1. Somebody will have shown up by six. 2. They will have done everything by Sunday. 3. Ann will have bought the tickets by the time you arrive at the station. 4. Tom will have ordered everything when we come to the restaurant. 5. By 2020, people will have learnt to grow food on the seabed. 6. By the end of the autumn, they will have built a new skating-rink in this district. 7. Antony will have opened a new cafe not far from here by the end of the year.

### 8. Correct the mistakes.

1. They will have gone for the conference by the time you reach. 2. I will have explains the incident to the official before you arrive. 3. The police man will have fined before the papers arrive. 4. The patient will have recover by the time doctor arrives. 5. He will have called you by 6.00. 6. She will has complete his home work by evening. 7. It will have reached the destination by tomorrow. 8. We will have enjoyed the party by the time it ends. 9. They have reject the plan before you even get back here. 10. The professor will have completed the lecture before the period ends.

### 9. Complete the following sentences.

1. By the time he comes,... 2. When this term is over,... 3. By the end of the week,... 4. By the end of the academic year, ... 5. When they are through with this task, ... 6. When my parents come home, ... 7. By the end of this month, ... 8. Before the end of his/her holiday, ... 9. Before the end of this week, ... 10. When they get to the station, ... 11. When he leaves his house, ...

**10. Translate into Russian.**

1. Why won't you have returned by this evening? 2. He will have read this book by tomorrow evening. Will you have done your homework by seven o'clock? 3. I am sure they will have built this house long before the end of the year. 4. Will she have finished everything by the time they return? 5. We will have done half of the journey when we reach the bank of the river. 6. The children will have already gone to bed by the time their father arrives. 7. I will have seen this exhibition by the end of the year. 8. They will have pulled down all these old houses in three years' time. 9. We will have spent all our money by the end of the holiday. 10. She will have already taken her exams by the end of the week.

**11. Use Future Indefinite or Future Perfect for future action.**

1. Mark (to see) Nina tomorrow. 2. Kate (to see) Bob by Monday. 3. We (to close) the shop early on Sunday. 4. They (to close) the shop before we get there. 5. I (to pack) by the times the taxi comes. 6. They (to pack) when I bring them my suitcase. 7. She (to finish) her work on Tuesday. 8. We (to finish) our work by Friday. 9. David (to book) tickets in a week. 10. Sandra (to book) tickets by the time the vacations begin.

**12. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect tense.**

1. In a fortnight's time they (take) our exam. 2. She (finish) this book by tomorrow evening. 3. By this time tomorrow she (have) our injections. 4. By the end of next year he (be) here eleven years. 5. I'll still be here next summer but my parents(leave). 6. She (finish) this job in ten minutes. 7. By next winter we (build) three houses in that field. 8. When she reach Valparaiso she (sail) all round the world. 9. At the rate I am going I (spend) all my money by the time I am twenty. 10. By the time he get to the party everything (be) eaten. 11. The train (leave) before we reach the station. 12. When he come back I (finish) all the housework.

**13. Fill in the correct form verb in either the Future Perfect or Future Indefinite tense.**

*E.g: Anna will have completed her Bachelor's Degree by June(complete).*

1. Fred the scholarship by the time he starts school in September (get).  
2. By this time next month, I hope they this new shop (finish). 3. By this time tomorrow night we in Paris (arrive). 4. She the message by the time your flight takes off? (receive). 5. David the night shift by the time you get up in the morning (not finish). 6. By the time we get on the plane, they already the luggage (load). 7. By 2020, I hope researchers a cure for cancer (find).

**14. Choose the correct form of the verb, given in brackets.**

1. He (work) at the office all day long tomorrow. 2. She (finish) the book by the evening. 3. I (be) tired after my work. 4. They (write) the test by six o'clock. 5. I can't come at three o'clock tomorrow because I (work) at that time. 6. They (send) us a parcel as soon as the steamer arrives. 7. While my father is having his breakfast, I (read) the book. 8. By the end of the year I (learn) to speak English. 9. Alec (ring) you up and tell you everything about the meeting. 10. They (not, play) tennis on Monday afternoon. 11. I (carry) this bag for you. 12. In December that firm (carry) on negotiations for the purchase of software. 13. In spring the director (still, work) on her new film. 14. They (not, find) the material by tomorrow. 15. Nina (not, go) to the cinema with us.

**15. Fill in the spaces with the correct form of the verb in parentheses in the Future Perfect tense.**

*E.g.: Buyers cannot look at the condominiums next week. The carpenters (not, finish) will not have finished the kitchen cabinets yet.*

1. Fred wants to drive to the beach in June, but he (not, receive) his driver's license yet. 2. Helen will need a shower when she gets home from camping. She (not, take) one for two days. 3. They don't want to leave the pool at noon. They (not, swim) long enough by then. 4. The runners will all need some water when they get here. They (not, drink) anything for the last three miles. 5. When I go to work out at the gym on Tuesday, I (not, exercise) for a week! 6. Linda would like to go diving tomorrow, but she (not, take) lessons by then. 7. When the company moves its offices in March, it (not, move) them for 75 years. 8. Sam is learning to fly small planes, but he (not, fly) enough hours by winter to begin flying solo.

**16. Use the Future Perfect, the Future Indefinite and the Present Indefinite Tense instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. Helen (to hope) when she (to come) back you (to finish) your homework. 2. You (to be) late. By the time you (to get) there they (to eat) everything up. 3. Too many people (to fall ill) every day. I'm afraid by the end of the month epidemic (to spread) here. 4. These batteries (to run out) in two days. Don't forget to get some more! 5. Your watch (to be) slow. We (to be) late! The party (to begin) by the time we (to come)! 6. The house is very old. They (to demolish) it by the time you (to come) to our city again, I think. 7. Tornadoes (to speed) through the island every year. By the end of the season they (to damage) many buildings and (to injure) or (to kill) many people. 8. By that time you (to go) crazy or (forget) it all.

**17. Use the Future Indefinite, the Future Continuous or the Future Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. Sorry, but I can't come at 5. I (play) football with my mates. 2. I (be) very sad if you do that. 3. I suppose the concert (finish) about 6. 4. Don't phone me between 8 a.m. and 12 p.m. I (work). 5. This time tomorrow I (fly) to France. 6. By the time you arrive, she (go). 7. I (tell) you everything when I go back. 8. This time next week I (relax) at the beach. 9. Tomorrow she (write) a very important exam. 10. I can visit you at 5. We (finish) the game by then. 11. I think she (pass) tomorrow's exam. 12. John is very upset today. I (try) to talk to him. 13. In half an hour everybody (watch) the film. 14. By the end of the week he (spend) all his money. 15. Next month we (be married) for 25 years.

**18. Open the brackets and put the verbs into the Future Indefinite, the Future Perfect, the Present Indefinite or the Present Perfect Tense.**

1. By 6 o'clock we (have) dinner. 2. By the end of the week she (finish) the translation. 3. Before you (come) Laura (do) all the work. 4. Ronald (look) through the article by 10 o'clock. 5. They (receive) our letter by Friday. 6. By the time they (get) to the forest the rain (stop). 7. I think she (answer) the letter by this time. 8. They (begin) to work after they (read) all the instructions. 9. She (not do) anything until she (take) necessary steps. 10. We (prepare) the plan by tomorrow. 11. I suppose when my letter (reach) you I already (return) from your voyage. 12. Greg (pass) an exam after he (learn) all the material. 13. I am afraid they (not discuss) all the questions by the time they (come). 14. We (not be able) to start the experiment before we (obtain) the necessary data. 15. The secretary already (look) through all the papers before the boss (come). 16. My train (leave) by the time you (come) to the station.

**19. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form: be+going to, Present Continuous, Future Indefinite, Future Continuous or Future Perfect.**

1. My dear children, I want you to be very good this afternoon because I'm not feeling well. – It's O.K., mother. We promise we (behave). 2. This professor (give) his seminar at 11.30. 3. I'm afraid I can't see my friends on the 22nd because I (attend) a training course in Saint – Petersburg. 3. By the end of November we (buy) the new computer. 5. Excuse me, but I can't reach those books on the top shelf. – Move over. I (get) them down for you. 6. The plane (take off) at six in the evening. At 19.00, Miss Brown (travel) to Turkey. Miss Brown (arrive) in Turkey by 10.30. 7. This time tomorrow she

(start) my project. 8. I hope that by the time I am your age, I (achieve) as much as you have. 9. I'm afraid the printer isn't working. – Don't worry, it's not a very urgent letter. I (print) it. 10. Our Sales Manager has finally chosen what he wants as a company car. He (buy) a new car. 11. In 10 years time I probably (work) for a larger company. 12. Another wine? – No thanks, I'm driving. I (have) a coffee. 13. Could you make sure Robert gets my message? – Yes, I (tell) him myself when he gets in. 14. Give me the report and I (show) it to the lawyers before they (leave). 15. I'm afraid I can't take you to the airport. Something important has just come up. – Never mind. I (take) a taxi. 16. Our Export Manager is in China at the moment looking at new offices. We (open) a branch there next year.

## 20. Translate into English.

1. Если ты не поторопишься и не попадешь туда к пяти часам, директор уйдет из офиса домой. 2. Полагаю, что к тому времени мы уже примем окончательное решение, что мы скажем его жене. 3. Они уже договорятся о встрече с директором к тому времени, когда мы вернемся? 4. Когда ты окончательно закончишь читать эту книгу, ты узнаешь много новых слов и выражений. 5. Мы не будем выполнять это задание, пока всецело не изучим все инструкции. 6. Мы примем все необходимые меры только после того, как полностью изучим этот вопрос. 7. Я уверена, что к тому времени ты уже забудешь меня. 8. Если дети сделают уроки к трем часам, мы сможем взять их с собой. 9. Что мы будем делать, если к тому времени я не найду работу. 10. Мы не будем принимать никакого решения до тех пор, пока не закончим рассматривать этот вопрос. 11. К тому времени, как придут гости, я уже накрою на стол. 12. К концу года мы будем уже знакомы друг с другом уже пять лет. 13. Я верну тебе словарь к тому времени, когда я полностью переведу эту статью. 14. Надеюсь, ты уже напишешь свой доклад по истории к концу этой недели. 15. Мы сделаем это упражнение к двум часам, а потом вместе пойдём в парк. 16. Они построят эту школу к 1 сентября. 17. Завтра исполняется 10 лет с тех пор, как она начала работать в этой фирме. 18. Надеюсь, к концу недели они починят нашу стиральную машину. 19. Рабочие закончат ремонт дома к началу осени. 19. Что ты успеешь сделать к тому времени, как я приду? 20. Они закончат строительство к зиме, не правда ли? 21. Уверен, что он не прочтёт эту книгу к назначенному сроку. 22. Они не напишут тест к приходу учителя.

## THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

---

### **1. Explain the use of the Present Perfect Continuous tense. Translate into Russian.**

1. He has been playing in the garden since evening. 2. I'm tired because I've been running. 3. Sue has been crying for the doll since afternoon. 4. John has been playing cricket for three hours. 5. Helen has been trying to solve the sum since morning. 6. Cindy has been writing the article since afternoon. 7. He has been treating patients in this dispensary for a long time. 8. Tom has been eating food for two hours. 9. I have been using your computer since 2013. 10. Anna has been visiting you for a long time. 11. You don't understand because you haven't been listening. 12. He has been living in Moscow since he left school.

### **2. Make the sentences interrogative.**

1. They have been talking for the last hour. 2. She has been working at that company for three years. 3. James has been teaching at the university since June. 4. We have been waiting here for over two hours! 5. Nancy has been taking her medicine for the last three days. 6. Recently, I have been feeling really tired. 7. She has been watching too much television lately. 8. I have been exercising lately. 9. Mary has been feeling a little depressed. 10. Lisa has not been practicing her English.

### **3. Answer the following questions and give short answers.**

*E.g.: Has it been raining since yesterday? Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.*

1. What have you been doing? You are so tired! 2. What have you been doing for the last 30 minutes? 3. Have you been waiting here for two hours? 4. How long have you been working for this company. 5. Has he been playing tennis for five hours? 5. How long have you been learning English? 6. How long have you been living in London? 7. Who has been reading my e-mail? 8. Have you been exercising lately? 9. Why has she not been taking her medicine for the last three days?

### **4. Make the sentences negative.**

1. He has been working at this company since 1998. 2. I have been waiting for you since two o'clock. 3. It has been raining for two hours. 4. The students have been writing the test since 9 o'clock. 5. We have been watching TV for 2 hours. 6. They have been waiting since yesterday morning. 7. Alex

and Jamey have been talking for the last hour. 8. Nancy has been working at that company for six years.

**5. Change these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.**

*E.g.: I have been learning English for five years. Have you been learning English for five years? Yes, I have. No, I haven't.*

1. Lena and Sveta have already been talking on the phone for half an hour. 2. She has been dreaming about a dog since she was a child. 3. Jane gave this cassette on Monday. 4. I have been listening to it since then. 5. She has been sleeping since she got back from her trip. 6. Her eyes are red because she's been crying all evening. 7. Joanna has been teaching at the university since February.

**6. Change these sentences into special questions.**

1. It has been raining continuously since morning. 2. The children are hungry. They have been playing in the garden for hours. 3. They have been learning English. 4. I have been waiting for one hour. 5. He has been reading this book since 9 o'clock. 6. He has been reading this book for two hours. 7. What have you been doing for the last four days? 8. I have been doing yoga lately. 9. She has been drinking green tea recently. 10. Noel has not been practicing her Math. 11. She has been doing well in Literature.

**7. Add the correct tag to these sentences.**

1. They have been playing for last three hours, \_\_\_? 2. She has been staying in this house for ten years, \_\_\_? 3. I have been waiting for the bus for last two hours, \_\_\_? 4. Diana has not been taking medicine for last three days, \_\_\_? 5. Ronald has been smoking cigarettes since his college days, \_\_\_? 6. Kate has been working here for last three years, \_\_\_? 7. John has been walking since early morning, \_\_\_? 8. I have been studying for last four hours, \_\_\_? 9. Jack has been singing songs since his childhood, \_\_\_?

**8. Ask the alternative questions.**

1. He (learn) English / French since last year? 2. Fred (play) football / hockey since he was 10? 3. Helen (read) a romantic novel / a detective story all evening? 4. They (lie in the sun / swim in the sea) all day? 5. It (rain) since yesterday/early morning? 6. You (stay in the hotel / with your parents) since you arrived here? 7. He (wait) for Alex / Nina? 8. Kevin (do) his homework for two / three hours? 9. You (talk) with Robert / Boris about this affair? 10. My mother (knit) a sweater / a pullover since April?

### 9. Translate the sentences.

1. Как давно вы уже читаете эту книгу? – Я читаю её уже месяц.  
 2. Собрание длится уже два часа, но они пока еще не подписали бумаги.  
 3. Почему у тебя грязные руки? Ты опять работал в саду?  
 4. Целый день идет дождь, а я оставила зонт дома.  
 5. Джинсы в моде уже больше века. Люди носят их все это время. А вы носите джинсы?  
 6. Мы ищем ключи уже три часа, но пока еще ничего не нашли.  
 7. Они ремонтируют квартиру с осени и очень устали.  
 8. Мой сын очень беспокоит меня. Он целый день сидит сегодня, ничего не делая и не говоря.  
 9. Она думает о нём тех пор, как они впервые встретились.  
 10. Я упорно тренируюсь всю весну, но пока еще не выиграл ни одной игры.

### 10. Put the questions to the subject.

1. I have been waiting for you since 9 o'clock.  
 2. She has been working here for 3 hours.  
 3. We have been sleeping for 7 hours.  
 4. What have you been doing? – I have been marking the composition.  
 5. He has been pruning the roses.  
 6. I've been waiting here since three o'clock.  
 7. He has been drinking too much.  
 8. That noise has been going on since we came home.  
 9. The telephone has been ringing for ten minutes, why don't you answer it.  
 10. Look at my hands! I've been cleaning your shoes.  
 11. He has been coming here day after day for years.

### 11. Ask questions about the information in italics.

1. I (*play*) football for an hour.  
 2. Jane (*take*) dancing classes.  
 3. We (*stay*) in the street because we have lost the key to the front door.  
 4. She (*read*) a very interesting book.  
 5. My parents (*stay*) with us for a while.  
 6. They (*play*) chess since 9 a.m.  
 7. My father (*drive*) a car for twenty years.  
 8. She (*look after*) the children for a month.  
 9. I (*look through*) the mail since breakfast.  
 10. Victor (*use*) this computer for eleven years.  
 11. I (*watch*) you for the last few days.  
 12. He (*tell*) you all this to make you realize the truth.

### 12. Correct the mistakes if there are any.

1. They are been travelling for two weeks.  
 2. I've thinking about you all week.  
 3. I can't say exactly how long I have been knowing Sally.  
 4. Sandra have been making phone calls all morning.  
 5. He has been being ill for a couple of weeks.  
 6. It has been raining all day. I wonder when it will stop.  
 7. They have been hearing to music for two hours.  
 8. My grandfather is working in the same place for over thirty years, and he is not planning to retire.  
 9. Do you have a driving license? – Yes. I have been having it for four years now.  
 10. I'm

not surprised John has failed his exam. He has been not working hard recently. 11. You're so red! How long were you sunbathing? All morning? – I haven't been sunbathing. I've been reading in the sun. 12. They are discussing the problem for hours, but has not solved it yet. 13. Somebody has been playing chess since 3 o'clock. 14. She has been hating oranges since his childhood.

**13. Choose the right tense form.**

1. Betty has been learning/has learned English for 2 years. 2. The birds have already flown/have been flying to the South. 3. They have known /have been knowing him for many years. 4. Mary has forgotten/has been forgetting to learn the poem. 5. The children have been watching/have watched cartoons for 2 hours. 6. The train has just come/has been coming. 7. We haven't been having/ haven't had a holiday for 5 years. 8. She has been teaching/has taught at this school for twenty years. 9. Tom has been painting/ has painted in his studio since 10 o'clock. 10. Linda and Boris have collected/ have been collecting stamps for 3 years. 11. Their parents have been/have being friends since their childhood. 12. Donald has been/ has been being a student for 2 years.

**14. Choose the most suitable verb tense to complete the sentences.**

1. It has snowed/ has been snowing since I arrived. 2. I have never travelled/ have never been travelling by train. 3. Have you ever seen / have you ever been seeing this play? 4. We have toured / have been touring Germany. Now we are in Berlin. 5. I have had/ have been having this car for more than ten years. 6. I have worked / have been working for hours.

**15. Use the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. I (not to see) him for ages. 2. He (to do) his lessons since lunch. 3. I (not to hear) about him for a long time. 4. I (to drive) since I was 17. 5. Jack (to fail) his driving test three times because κ doesn't know how to park. 6. I think he (make) a lot of improvement. 7. Alice (not/pass) her driving test because she doesn't know the rules well. 8. She (worry) about this for two months. 9. She (study) the driver's manual for hours every day. 10. She (not/take) another test yet. 11. I (to have) a headache since I got up. 12. He is my friend, I (to know) him for a long time.

**16. Use the Present Perfect Continuous instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. His phone (ring) for five minutes. I wonder why he doesn't answer.  
 2. Have you seen my key anywhere? I (look) for it for ages.  
 3. She (study) English for two years and doesn't even know the alphabet yet.  
 4. How long you (wait) for me? – I (wait) about half an hour.  
 5. It (rain) for four days now. There'll be a flood soon.  
 6. They (argue) about this for two hours now. Perhaps they should stop!  
 7. You (drive) all day. Let me drive now.  
 8. How long your father (smoke) cigarettes?  
 9. It (snow) for two days now. The roads will be blocked if it doesn't stop soon.  
 10. Linda (look) for a job for 4 months.  
 11. Where are your relatives? – They are traveling round the Europe. How long they (travel) round the Europe?  
 12. I (live) in Turkey for the last five years.  
 13. It (not rain) for a month now. The grass is very dry.  
 14. I (go) to this pub every evening for the last ten years.  
 15. You (lie) in the sun for two hours. You will get burned.  
 16. I (prepare) lessons for tomorrow for two hours and I haven't finished yet.  
 17. How long he (repair) his car? – Since morning.

**17. Use the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. It ... (rain) since early morning.  
 2. You needn't take an umbrella. The rain ... (stop).  
 3. How long... you ... (play) the piano?  
 4. I ... (play) the piano since I was five.  
 5. Mary ... (choose) books in the library for half an hour.  
 6. Betty ... (choose) a bag and is going to buy it.  
 7. Victor ... (travel) all over the world for ten years.  
 8. How long ... you ... (have) your watch? – For two years.  
 9. How long ... you ... (have) your English lesson? – For half an hour.  
 10. How long ... you ... (fish) in the river? – For three hours already.  
 11. He ... (be) a soldier for two years.

**18. Fill in the gaps with since or for.**

1. They've been fishing ...two hours.  
 2. He has been working in this office ... a month.  
 3. I've been living in France ...2005.  
 4. That man has been standing there... six o'clock.  
 5. It has been raining ... 3 hours.  
 6. Her family has been living in Moscow ... 1998.  
 7. I've been working in advertising... the past ten years.

**19. Complete the sentences. Put in the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. Look! That boy (break) the window.  
 2. I wonder if Jane (forget) my number. I (expect) her to call for the past three hours.  
 3. You look very upset.

What (happen)? 4. You (not finish) that novel yet? You read it for more than a week. 5. The meat must be nearly ready. She (cook) it for nearly an hour. 6. What you (do) for the last four hours? – I (sit) here working at this problem. 7. I (lose) my book. Can you help me look for it? 8. Robert is an actor. He (appear in several films). 9. Sorry! I'm late. – That's all right. I (not wait) long. 10. Henry just (sell) two of her paintings. – He's lucky. I (paint) for 6 years and I (not sell) a single picture yet. 11. I (sleep) since ten o'clock. It's time I woke up. 12. David (eat) two ice-creams. 14. We (walk) five kilometers.

## 20. Translate into English.

1. Они ремонтируют эту машину уже два дня. 2. Моя мама учит польский язык уже месяц. 3. Мы выращиваем этот сорт цветов уже 10 лет. 4. Я жду выхода нового сезона своего любимого телесериала уже долгое время. 5. Твои друзья живут в Англии с 2013 года? 6. Моя подруга не отвечает на мои звонки с прошлой ночи. 7. Они не живут вместе уже несколько месяцев. 8. Она не учит немецкий язык уже долгое время. 9. Я не встречаюсь со своими родственниками с 2013 года. 10. Он учиться играть на гитаре с этого лета или с прошлого лета? 11. Они гуляют в лесу уже час или полчаса? 12. Как долго мы живем в этой квартире? 13. Что ты печатаешь с утра? 14. Кто помыл мою машину? Она безупречно чистая! 15. Разве она не преподает английский с 1999 года? 16. Он не катался во дворе целый день, не так ли? 17. Я коллекционирую различные почтовые открытки с детства. 18. Она смотрит этот сериал уже в течение пяти часов. 19. Они выглядят уставшими, потому что они сейчас бежали очень быстро. 20. В комнате плохо пахнет. Студенты снова курили здесь! 21. Мои волосы мокрые, так как я только что плавал.

## THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

---

### 1. Make the sentences interrogative.

1. He had been drinking milk out the carton when I walked into the kitchen. 2. I had been working at the company for six years when I got the promotion. 3. Mark had been walking three miles a day before he broke his leg. 4. The program that was terminated had been working well since 2001. 5. Cindy had been playing the piano for 15 years when she was finally asked

to do a solo with the local orchestra. 6. Ronald been watching TV before she visited you yesterday. 7. I had been writing for several hours.

## **2. Make the sentences negative.**

1. I had been working on the ranch for more than half my life when I retired. 2. She had been studying German for four years by the time she moved to the country. 3. When the teacher came back, we had been reading for half an hour. 4. He had been driving in the wrong direction for an hour before he noticed my mistake. 5. Lina had been helping me before she went to her office yesterday.

## **3. Explain the use of the Present Continuous tense. Translate into Russian.**

1. Linda needed a break because she had been studying all morning. 2. Victor had been learning English for 12 years before he moved to England. 3. I did not go out last night because I had been working all day. 4. Helen felt fit for the marathon because she had been training a lot. 5. When I went to see my boss, his secretary told me that he had been speaking on the phone for two hours. 6. You got sick because you had been eating the whole time. 7. The musician had been living in this town for ten years when he became director of the opera house. 8. We had been going out with each other for two years before I met his family. 9. The passengers had been waiting for four hours before the ground staff could finally give them information on the delay of their flight.

## **4. Correct the mistakes.**

1. Ann had been done the ironing for two hours yesterday. 2. We had tried to catch a taxi for twenty-five minutes last Sunday before we managed to stop one. 3. He had been not surfing the Net all day yesterday. 4. Nigel had being trying to get in touch with you for a week. 5. Had been you waiting for a bus for half an hour last Wednesday? 6. How long Nina had been speaking on the phone yesterday? 7. Had Susan been sunbathing all day yesterday? – No, she had. 8. I have been dancing for more than an hour yesterday before my wife got tired. 9. Who had played the piano in your room from 5 to 6 o'clock yesterday? 10. Why had been crying your baby all the morning yesterday?

## **5. Ask the special questions.**

1. Ben had been working for three hours when Misha came home. 2. By the time Sandra found an umbrella, it had been raining for ten minutes.

3. By the time Nina got to the office, the client had been waiting for an hour.  
 4. I had been waiting for an hour by the time Tom got to the office.  
 5. I had been feeding the dogs when I tripped and fell.  
 6. I had been feeling well, so I sent him away.  
 7. Sally had been expecting a positive answer when she got a job.  
 8. Olga and Anna had been walking long before they got lost.

**6. Answer the following questions and give short answers.**

1. Which technology had she been working, at that time?  
 2. Where had you been visiting since afternoon?  
 3. She had been working, had she not been?  
 4. Had you been watching that serial since morning?  
 5. Had Lena been washed her clothes for four hours?  
 6. Had you been solving all the questions since 3 p.m.?  
 7. Had Sandra been reading that book for 4 hours?  
 8. Why had he been sending me these parcels?  
 9. What had you been doing with that newspaper?  
 10. I had been visiting the market, had you not been?  
 11. Why had he been wasting my time since morning when I got up?  
 12. What had you been thinking about me since 4 p.m.?  
 13. Why had you not been doing anything for 7 months?  
 14. For how long had you been wasting your time just like this?  
 15. Since when had she been teaching him?

**7. Put the questions to the subject.**

1. We had been learning English for a few years, before I started to teach English.  
 2. The woman had been working in the factory for 10 years, before they closed the factory.  
 3. My friend had been studying in English, before she started to teach English.  
 4. My parents were upset. They had been waiting for the bus for over an hour.  
 5. Betty was sick. She had been fighting cancer for many years.  
 6. I had been talking to her for half an hour.  
 7. We had been working on this plan for years.  
 8. Our teacher had been teaching for ten years.  
 9. Alec had been writing a book since Monday.  
 10. Fred had been giving them assignment for a week.

**8. Make these sentences into general questions.**

*E.g.: My father had been driving for an hour when his car broke down. – Had my father been driving for an hour when his car broke down?*

1. We'd been waiting for an hour when our train finally arrived.  
 2. Sandra had been playing the guitar for over six years when she gave it up in 2013.  
 3. They'd been living in Wales for five years when they moved to Scotland last year.  
 4. I'd been standing there for nearly half an hour when I realized I was at the wrong bus-stop.  
 5. We had not been seeing anything unusual here.  
 6. The child had not been improving for past three years.  
 7. We had

not been watching films since afternoon. 8. I had not been singing a song since morning. 9. She had not been disobeying him since a long time.

**9. Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.**

*E.g.: He/read/for/an hour/three hours/before you turned on the TV? – Had he been reading for an hour or three hours before she turned on the TV? – (He'd been reading) for three hours.*

1. You/sit/in the sunshine/for/about thirty minutes/ an hour/when you suddenly felt sick? 2. There were books everywhere. She/read books/tidy up/her room? 3. Dave/smoke/for 20 years/less/before he gave up that bad habit? 4. They/travel/for/a week/two weeks/before they finally got there? 5. He/try to get/Julia/her sister/on the phone?

**10. Ask questions about the information in italics.**

1. Helen had been painting her room before her parents called in. 2. They'd been trying to phone me all the weekend. 3. Bess had been staying at the hotel because her relatives couldn't put her up. 4. Ben and Henry had been going to the museum when I met them. 5. Greg had been looking through the 'The Times' magazine when Victor dropped in. 6. Mary had been waiting for David's call that evening. 7. They'd been walking 3 kilometres an hour.

**11. Give the right tag to these sentences.**

1. You hadn't been standing there since 6 o'clock, \_\_\_? 2. They hadn't been writing to the firm for all that time, \_\_\_? 3. Jane had been studying English for 5 years before she visited England, \_\_\_? 4. He'd been running in the park when I saw him, \_\_\_? 5. They had been ringing me about it every day for the past week, \_\_\_? 6. You hadn't been playing volleyball all evening, \_\_\_?

**12. Write the sentences, putting one verb in each sentence into the Past Perfect Continuous tense or Past Indefinite tense of the infinitives in brackets.**

1 I'd been trying to sell my car for six months before I found a buyer (try/find). 2 How long had the fire been burning before the firefighters arrived? (burn/arrive). 3. Dylan chess for several years before he his first tournament (study/enter). 4. Before I work here, who the client's account? (start/manage). 5. Although they the house for two years, it still ready (build/not be). 6. Mario well before the exam (not feel). 7. At last we the movie that everyone about (see/talk). 7. The students math problems when one of

them fainted (solve). 8. How long he before the accident? (drive/occur).  
9. Paula and Terry tennis when it to rain (play/begin).

### **13. Use the Past Perfect Continuous or the Past Perfect.**

1. My mother (cook) the meal. 2. I (prepare) the party for four hours.  
3. The children (play) in the park when it began to rain. 4. My father (be) in hospital for the past two weeks. 5. He (practice) yoga since 2013. 6. I was tired. I (drive) all day. 7. What (you/do) when you wrote an article? 8. It (rain) for hours and all the curtains (get) wet. 9. His eyes are red. He (read) for about two hours. 10. I (already/phone) her mother when she came home. 11. When my wife got to the beach I (lie) in the sun for three hours. 12. Our parents (plant) trees all day. 13. When I got there, they (water) flowers for hours.

### **14. Translate into Russian and comment on the use of the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.**

1. They had been living in this city for almost three years when their daughter came back to the Washington 2. They felt very tired when they came home because they had been walking in the rain for a long time. 3. It had been raining for three hours already when I left home. 4. Nina tried to stop Diana, who had been talking for the last five minutes. 5. Mark rose from the arm-chair in which he had been sitting. 6. I saw that my sister had been weeping, but I didn't say anything. 7. I thought that she had come to talk about the problem which we had been already discussing for hours. 8. Linda had been learning English for four years before she could speak fluently. 9. How long had you been waiting before they came?

### **15. Make up sentences from the words given in brackets to extend the situations.**

*E.g.: I looked out of the window. The sun was shining. But the ground was wet. (It/to rain) It had been raining.*

1. Kate woke up suddenly. She was frightened (She/to dream). 2. John came home. He was tired. His hands were dirty (He/to work/in the garden). 3. Nina was tired and angry when I came home. The first thing she told me was that she hated music (Our neighbour/to practice/the piano). 4. When she entered the room no one was smoking. But there was a smell of cigarettes (Someone/to smoke/in the mom). 5. Betty felt frustrated. She was staring hopelessly at the lock. (She/to try/to open her own door/an hour. 6. When I came home, Henry and Fred were in different rooms. They didn't want to

talk and Henry had a black eye (They/to fight). 7. When the test was over, we looked really tired. (We/to write/two). 8. Tom came from the beach. His eyes were red (He/tolie/in the sun/too much). 9. When I came home, dinner was ready, but my mother was tired and couldn't eat at all (my mother /to cook/since morning). 10. When she got up from the table, her eyes hurt and her head was going to burst (She/to read up/for the exam). 11. When Sue opened her eyes, the first thing she saw was deep snow lying everywhere. She ran up to the window. There had been no snow the day before (It/to snow/all night).

**16. Join the following sentences. Use the Past Perfect Continuous Tense in the main clause.**

*E.g.: They began watching TV. After half an hour their parents came.- They had been watching TV for half an hour when their parents came.*

1. They had arranged to meet in the cafe. She came and began waiting. After fifteen minutes she realized that she had come to the wrong cafe. 2. We went to live to Moscow. Six months later our son joined us. 3. We started to play tennis at about four. Somewhere about half past ten it began to rain. 4. Anna couldn't calm the baby down. It was crying. After sixteen minutes her husband came. 5. Helen came home. She realized that she had forgotten her keys. She tried to find them in her handbag. After five minutes her husband came with the keys. 7. I started cooking dinner. After ten minutes my husband came to help me. 8. Bob was trying to fix his car. After two hours he gave up the idea. 9. He sat down and began to write her report. After half an hour his sister called him. 10. Nina worked for this company. After 30 years she retired. 11. Sofia studied French. Then, after six years, she went to France. 12. Ronald began to play the guitar when he was seven. He took part in his first tournament when he was ten. 13. The orchestra began playing. After ten minutes this man ran into the hall. 14. The family began watching an interesting film. After half an hour the TV broke down. 15. We settled down in Saint-Petersburg. After a fortnight our relatives joined us. 16. They sat down to dinner. After five minutes the door-bell rang. 17. Mary went to the park. After five minutes she realized she had forgotten to close the door.

**17. Use the Past Simple or the Past Perfect Continuous Tense instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. I (to look) at Nina. She (to know) she (to cry). 2. Kevin (to tell) him about his plan, which he (to think of) all morning. 3. Kitty (to close) the book

which she (to read) and (to look up) at her mother. 4. Through the window I (to see) the room where my friends (to sit) the previous night. 5. Peter (to think) for some time before he (to dare) to answer. 6. We (to sit down) to dinner which my wife (to cook) all morning. 7. How long Tom (to read) when this terrible accident (to happen)? 8. When I (to come) everyone (to stop) talking. They (to talk) about my birthday and the presents and (not to want) to tell me anything beforehand. 9. When the lesson (to be) over, the teacher (to ask) the students to turn in the tests they (to write) since its beginning. 10. How long this woman (to stand) there and (to watch) you before you (to notice) her? 11. How long they (to wait) for a taxi before it (to come)?

### 18. Translate the sentences.

1. When the student revolution came, I had been working there for 7 months. 2 Before Jane finally decided to go to England she had been thinking about it for months. 3 We had eaten all the chocolate cake by the time Greg got to the party. 4. When the doctor told her, her liver was seriously bad, she had been eating hamburgers for a month. 5. When she asked Kelly if she wanted to go out, she said she couldn't because she was finishing an assignment. 6. Peter came into the room panting. He had been jogging round the park. 7. Fred wasn't in. He was jogging around the park. 8. She was having a bath when she suddenly had a great idea. 9. I told you I was seriously thinking about finding another job soon. 10. She had thinking about finding a new job for about a year before she finally got round to it. She is happy now. 11. It was obvious from his outrageous behaviour that he had been drinking. 12. I was drinking a tea in the cafe, when I saw a famous actor walk past the window.

### 19. Translate into Russian.

1. Его голос задрожал. Я и не представлял, как тяжело ему приходилось. 2. Они упорно работали и смогли завершить проект вовремя. 3. Мы видели много луж. Шел дождь? 4. Она ждала самолет уже два часа, когда объявили о его задержке. 5. Секретарь набирал этот текст два часа, а потом нашел его в другом файле. 6. *Мы были уставшими. Мы только что проплавали 3 часа.* 7. *Она читала всю ночь, когда обнаружила эти факты.* 8. Они жили вместе 5 лет, до того как поженились. 8. Вчера мои дочери целый день помогали мне собирать груши в саду. 9. Шеф вчера разговаривал с нами больше двух часов. 10. На прошлой неделе студенты готовились к экзаменам со вторника по пятницу. 11. Она вчера не пользовалась компьютером с шести до вось-

ми часов вчера. 12. Вчера они тренировались в спортзале 3 часа? – Да, они тренировались с пяти до восьми часов вчера. 13. Как долго твой сын катался на велосипеде? – Он катался около двух часов. 14. Почему он вчера целый день работал в офисе? – Он весь день готовился к собранию. 15. Какой фильм Вы смотрели вчера с девяти вечера? – Я смотрел комедию. 16. Какие документы они готовили целый день в прошлый понедельник? – Они готовили отчеты для наших торговых партнеров. 17. Что профессор вам вчера объяснял на лекции? – Он объяснял правила грамматики.

## 20. Translate into Russian.

1. Вчера, наконец, он ей позвонил. Она ждала этого звонка несколько дней. 2. Вечером я была очень усталой, так как бегала в парке несколько часов. 3. Джейн ехала на машине много часов, прежде чем добралась до города. 4. Мой сосед отслужил в армии год года перед тем, как пойти работать в эту фирму. 5. Мы обсуждали этот вопрос уже час, когда в комнату вошел отец. 6. Он включил свет, лег на софу и принялся за книгу, которую он читал. 7. Она рассказала мне, что она упорно занималась английским языком несколько месяцев. 8. Катя распаковывала свои вещи уже час, когда ей позвонил ее друг. 9. В понедельник я получил письмо, которое я ожидал уже несколько дней. 10. Мы уехали из города, где мы прожили пятнадцать лет. 11. Студенты писали контрольную работу около получаса, когда их преподаватель внезапно покинул аудиторию. 13. Мой друг курил десять лет, когда надумал, что пора бросать курить. 14. Мы спали уже два часа, когда родители вернулись домой. 15. Более чем два месяца не было дождя и все фрукты падали прежде чем успевали созреть. 16. Вчера, наконец, она нашла книгу, которую искала весь вечер. 17. Я прождала вас целый час, а потом поняла, что ждать более я не могу.

## THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

---

### 1. Explain the use of the Future Perfect Continuous tense. Translate into Russian.

1. By 7 o'clock Fred will have been driving for eight long hours. 2. Sue will have been waiting for Fred in the hall for three hours when he comes. 3. By

2021 Alex will have been living in Fred for sixteen years. 4. When Sally finishes this course, she will have been learning French for 6 years. 5. By the end of September, Boris won't have been working long enough to get any benefits. 7. In three months, Mark and David won't have been seeing each other for a year. 8. When I come at 7 pm, will you have been practicing long? 9. Will Mary have been living in China longer than she's lived anywhere else by 2024?

## **2. Make the sentences negative.**

1. By next September, I will have already been working at this university for 15 years. 2. In two weeks, she will have been writing a single line of a new novel for 5 month. 3. By the end of the week, he will have been doing your homework for 2 days. 4. In June next year, you will have been studying for three years. 5. I will have been playing the piano for 7 years by then. 6. He will have been working in the company for 6 years next month. 7. By 2 o'clock they will have been washing your car for an hour and a half. 8. When I graduate from the university I will have been learning English for 10 years.

## **3. Make these sentences interrogative.**

1. In 20 minutes he will have been working in the garden for two hours. 2. Next year Jane will have been studying English for 5 years. 3. In a month I will have been travelling abroad for a year. 4. The workers will have been restoring the building for a year in summer. 5. Next winter I'll have been teaching for 5 years in this school. 6. The children will have been sleeping for two hours by the time the parents come home. 7. By the time the manager turns up, the customers will have been waiting for him for several hours. 8. My friend complains that by January he will have been reading "War and Peace" for three months. 9. Helen will have been staying here just a year this June.

## **4. Answer the following questions and give short answers.**

1. Will he have been writing his poem for the whole year before they sign a contract with him? 2. How long will you have been living in this flat by next year? 3. Will he not have been driving for 8 hours before I replace him? 4. Won't she have been cooking pizza for 30 minutes, when we come? 5. Will I have been playing tennis for 10 years by then? 6. Will you have been waiting for more than two hours when her plane finally arrives?

### 5. Change these sentences into special questions.

1. He'll be tired when he gets here. He'll have been travelling all day.  
 2. How long will Jo have been working when he retires? 3. Next month I'll have been studying Chinese for two years. 4. You will have been working when I arrive. 5. He won't have been studying long enough to qualify. 6. Next week Jane is going to swim from England to France. 7. By the time she gets to France she'll have been swimming non-stop for over thirteen hours.

6. Add the correct tag to these sentences.

1. We will have been walking for two days, \_\_\_? 2. Steve will have been doing this job, \_\_\_? 3. I will have been playing for three hours, \_\_\_? 4. She will have been teaching me the lesson by the time our school starts, \_\_\_? 5. Sandra will have been feeling little stressed when I reach there, \_\_\_? 6. Those girls will have been talking to each other before the teacher comes, \_\_\_? 7. He will have been living in my house by the next month, \_\_\_? 8. You will be taking lunch because you will have been washing the clothes for 5 hours, \_\_\_? 9. I will have been making notes for the whole night tomorrow so I will be taking a comfort sleep tonight, \_\_\_?

### 7. Ask the alternative questions. Give answers.

1. By the next year I (start) learning French / English? 2. Next year I (live) in Tokyo for ten/eleven years? 3. Next month we (own) this house for ten/twenty years? 4. When he is fifty, he (learn) English for twenty five/ sixty-five years? 5. We will have been living in this house for ten/eleven years by next month? 6. I will be tired when I get home because I will have been walking for over an hour/ two hours? 7. I (stay) here just a year this July/August?

### 8. Put the questions to the subject.

1. She will have been living in France for 2 years when she leaves. 2. Next year I will have been working here for twenty years. 3. I will have been waiting here for two hours by six o'clock. 4. When I come at 7:00, will you have been practicing long? 5. When I finish this course, I will have been learning Spanish for three years. 6. By 2010 I will have been living in London for sixteen years.

### 9. Correct the mistakes.

1. I have been thinking of it for three days. 2. They has been living in New York for ten years. 3. They have been written a composition for two hours. 4. They have been played volleyball since 3 o'clock. 5. When I return to the laboratory, my friends will has been working there for several hours. 6. I was

very tired when I arrived home. I'd been working hard all day. 7. At last the bus came. I'd been waiting for twenty minutes.

**10. Complete the following sentences.**

1. How long will you have been ...? 2. Before they come, we will have been ... 3. Jane will be very tired when she comes home, because she will have been ... 4. My father and I will have been... 5. How long will you have been ...? 6. The famous artist will have been... 7. By the next year, Ben and his wife will have been ...

**11. Translate into Russian and comment on the use of Future Perfect Continuous Tense.**

1. They will have been working for six hours already when we come and join them. 2. By the first of March he'll have been working here for 12 years. 3. They will have been trying to solve this problem for two years by 2018. 4. She'll have been writing an essay since six o'clock when her parents come. 5. The students will have been answering for a whole hour already by five o'clock. 6. She'll have been talking for two hours already by four. I want to use the phone, too. 7. Someone will have been playing the guitar for two hours by twenty-one. They started at eight. When are they going to stop?

**12. Use the Future Perfect Continuous Tense or the Present Simple instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. I (to write) an essay for three hours when she (to come). 2. Tom (to learn) French for six years already when he (to enter) this institute. 3. My father (to watch) this film for an hour already when my mother (to ring) him up. 4. My relatives (to have) dinner for half an hour tomorrow when I (to call) for them. 5. By June we (to live) here for seven years. 6. When you (to enter) the University you (to study) languages for more than eleven years. 7. The painter (to work) on this landscape for almost a year by Easter. 8. They (to quarrel) for more than an hour when the police (to come)! 9. We (to read) up for their exam for more than three hours already by the time our friends (to come) to the library and (to join) us. 10. I (to travel) for almost a year by New Year's Day, but I (not to want) to return.

**13. Read and translate the sentences. Comment on the use of the Future Perfect Continuous.**

1. Do you think you'll be tired in the evening? -Yes, I'll have already been working for seven hours. 2. By this time tomorrow she will have been travelling

for eleven hours. 3. By the time you get here the friends will have been waiting for an hour already. 4. By April, my sister have been riding that bike for three years. 5. By Christmas, I'll have been working for this company for twenty years. 6. The people will have been sitting here for 20 minutes when we come. 7. In ten minutes' time he will have been hanging around here for exactly five hours! 8. When they finish drawing I will have been waiting for them for 30 minutes. 9. Tomorrow it will be a year as we have been working on this project. 10. When the boss sees me, I will have been waiting for him for 3 hours. 11. My father will have been repairing his car for two weeks on Friday. 12. I will have been working on this book for a year soon.

#### **14. Supply the Future Perfect Continuous Tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Next year we (study) Chinese for three years. 2. In summer my friend (travel) in Thailand for a year. 3. It (snow) for a week tomorrow. 4. Next year she (give) music lessons for twenty years. 5. In a month he (play) football for seven years. 6. In ten minutes they (discuss) this question for three hours. 7. In October they (build) their country house for 3 years. 8. In three months she (work) at school for twenty years. 9. In half an hour they (write) a test-paper for two hours. 10. The play (run) for a year in May. 11. In November 2019 she (dance) on this stage for ten years. 12. Tomorrow it (rain) heavily for almost a week. 13. She (study) in London for five years when I come here. 14. He (teach) German for two years when I begin to teach English. 15. By next February he (live) here for seven years. 16. At six o'clock I (work) for five hours. 17. I (work) at the library for 3 hours when you come there.

#### **15. Translate into English.**

1. На будущий год будет 15 лет, как он работает в гостинице. 2. Через три дня будет ровно год, как она учит китайский язык. 3. Через неделю будет пять лет, как они строят театр в нашем городе. 4. Будущим летом будет два года, как наша компания работает над этой проблемой. 5. На будущий год исполнится 7 лет, как он играет в баскетбол в этой команде. 6. Через несколько дней будет целый год, как она пишет этот роман. 7. В июле будет год, как он пишет портрет своей жены. 8. Через 10 минут будет 2 часа, как студенты пишут контрольную работу. 9. К первому сентября этого года я уже шестнадцать лет буду работать в этом вузе. 10. В августе будет 13 лет, как мы женаты.

**16. Supply the Future Perfect or the Future Perfect Continuous. Sometimes both are possible.**

1. We (complete) the new bridge by the end of the month. 2. By the end of the week I (wait) four months for my telephone to be repaired. 3. I hope you (finish) this report by the end of the day. 4. They (fly) nonstop for sixteen hours before they get to China. 5. Our mother (leave) for work before we get home from school. 6. By this time next year she (write) her memories. 7. Do you know that your brother (work) for this company for six years by next month? 8. They (be married) for twenty-nine years next year. 9. How long they (look) for a house by next Tuesday? 10. Do you realize that on May 17 we (live) in this flat for eighty years?

**17. Put the verbs in the brackets in one of the following tenses: the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Present Perfect, the Future Indefinite, the Future Continuous, the Future Perfect, and the Future Perfect Continuous.**

1. She (wait) for him at the hotel at midday tomorrow. 2. I (finish) everything by the time you get back tomorrow. 3. We (have) an operation then, so don't come until some weeks later. 4. He wonder what he (do) at this time tomorrow. 5. I hope you (work) at this time tomorrow. 6. Please show me the painting when you (complete) it. 7. They (live) here twenty years next December. 9. When you ... (explain) the situation to her, come and tell me what she (say). 10. While you (have) your bath, I will prepare a meal. 11. The clock is broken but my father (have) it repaired next week. 12. While you (rest), I will read to you from a good book. 13. She will want to know what you (do) for these last three years.

**18. Supply the required future tense (Future Indefinite, Continuous, Perfect) instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. I hope you (not forget) all this by tomorrow. 2. I think she (cook) dinner by the time our relatives (come) home. 3. My grandfather (be) a pensioner for eight years by next winter. 4. I hope they (tell) him the news by the time we (come). 5. Ask her when she (finish) packing. 6. What you (do) when I (call) on you at 7 tomorrow? 7. The plane (approach) London at this time tomorrow. 8. We (come) to see them next Sunday. 9. By the end of the year they (be) through with their experimental work. 10. The doctor (examine) his last patient at this time tomorrow.

### 19. Translate into English.

1. Елена будет преподавать в университете уже больше двенадцати лет, к тому времени, когда она уедет в Лондон. 2. Разве он не будет смотреть фильм уже час до того, как мы придем? 3. В ноябре будет 18 лет, как эта семья живет в этом доме. 4. До того, как он позвонит мне, я просижу в кафе уже 20 минут. 5. В следующем месяце будет 25 лет, как она здесь работает? 6. К августу они будут строить дом уже около года. 7. К выходным ты будешь переводить эти статьи уже 2 дня? 8. Я уверен, что твои дети устанут, когда вы доберетесь домой, потому что вы будете идти пешком около двух часов. 9. Генри не будет писать письмо полчаса, когда его коллеги придут. 10. Когда ты закончишь свой курс йоги, ты будешь жить в Индии больше 5 месяцев?

### 20. Translate into English.

1. К сентябрю будет десять лет, как он водит эту машину. 2. Они будут экспериментировать в этой области уже много лет к концу тысячелетия. 3. К тому времени, как ты придешь, я уже два часа буду писать сочинение. 4. К тому времени как встанет солнце завтра утром, они уже два часа будут лететь на Кубу. 5. К первому сентября этого года я уже десять лет буду изучать английский язык. 6. Ей понадобится отдых. Она весь день будет работать. 7. К концу года мы будем жить в Москве уже двадцать лет. 8. Когда приедет Гарри, я уже три часа буду ехать в Москву. 9. К тому времени как дети вернутся из школы, их мама уже несколько часов будет работать в саду. 10. В июле будет год, как я живу в этом городе.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE

---

### 1. Which of the sentences are active and which are passive?

1. By the time you called me, I had already washed my car. 2. I will wash my car tomorrow. 3. My parents told me many interesting facts about our family's past. 4. Many tourists have visited that castle. 5. The lecturer was listened to with great attention. 6. The book was not being translated. 7. The students were not shown a new text-book. 8. Recently, John has been doing the work. 9. The customer was being helped by the salesman when the thief

came into the store. 10. The students are taught by the professor. 11. The famous artist will have been painting the picture for over six months by the time it is finished.

## **2. Find mistakes and correct them.**

1. A very important problem is touched in the book. 2. He is being listening to with great attention. 3. I am shown round the town yesterday. 4. They were being waited for us. 5. We have been offering a new job. 6. The manager were being asked a lot of questions. 7. He has been instructed two hours ago. 8. When has the film being discussed? 9. These windows haven't been cleaning for years. 10. Who will the house been built by? 11. The dresses have being tried on since 10 o'clock. 12. Your letter will have being typing by 16 o'clock tomorrow. 13. The book have already been brought. 14. The film was quite different from the one we had been showed before. 15. What did you feel when this tune was played? 16. I was promised that you would be consulted on that problem.

## **3. Complete the following sentences using the appropriate form of the verb.**

1. English is the main foreign language which...within most school systems (teach/teaches/is taught/ is teaching). 2. If the vegetable we...is very soft a crunchy relish (are serving/may be added/are served/may be added/is serving/may be added/may be served/added). 3. In India the right hand...for eating (used/is used/uses/is being used). 4. Needless to say, hands...before and after eating (must wash/wash/ must be washing/must be washed). 5. I haven't got a large appetite and when I...my favourite food, I leave half of it on the plate (was given/have given/ gave/am given). 6. My father...that roast meat is not healthy (persuaded/has persuaded/ has been persuaded/ persuades). 7. All tickets...before we got in the theatre (were sold/ are sold/ have sold/had been sold). 8. Students...next Friday (will be examined/are examined/will examine/have been examined). 9. The dinner...by five o'clock tomorrow (will be served/will have been served/is served/will serve). 10. She...practicing the piano yesterday (is heard/hear/was heard/ hears). 11. Most children...strongly...their parents (are, influencing on/ has, influence with/are, influenced by/have, influenced by). 12. All information...to me, before I found her address (had given/was given/had been given/ is given).

**4. Open the brackets. Use the verbs in the Present Indefinite Passive.**

1. The postbox (to empty) every day. 2. The cards (to postmark) at the post office. 3. The cards (to sort) into the different towns. 4. The mail (to load) into the train. 5. The mailbags (to unload) after their journey. 6. The bags (to take) to the post office. 7. The parcels (to sort) into the different streets. 8. The parcels (to deliver).

**5. Open the brackets. Use the verbs in the Past Indefinite Passive.**

1. The article (to publish) last week, if I am not mistaken. 2. I (to offer) an interesting job yesterday. 3. The letters (not to sign) yesterday. 4. The plane (delay) and he came two hours later. 5. The rooms (clean) yesterday. 6. The mail (deliver) by Victor. 7. The bell (rung) and the game started. 7. This book (write) many years ago. 8. His car (break) so he had to take a taxi. 9. This castle (build) in the 16th century. 10. Moscow (found) in 1147.

**6. Open the brackets. Use the verbs in the Future Indefinite Passive.**

1. I've missed the news block! When it (repeat)? 2. This work (to do) tomorrow. 3. The parcel (deliver) tomorrow morning. 4. She (examine) by the doctor tomorrow. 5. The ground (cover) with snow. 6. Piano lessons (give). 7. The film (release) in a month. 8. The construction of the new university (complete) next year. 9. It (do), I am sure. 10. The story (tell) by the teacher.

**7. Open the brackets. Use the Present Continuous Passive.**

1. A new road (build) now. 2. He (examine) by the doctor at the moment. 3. I (give) a cup of tea now. 4. A new big house (build) opposite my office. 5. My report (print) at the moment. 6. I (give) a glass of milk now. 7. The cake (cook) now by her. 8. The homework (do) by Anna right now. 9. The ball (take) now. 10. The room (clean) at that moment.

**8. Open the brackets. Use the Past Continuous Passive.**

1. When she came to the hotel, Tom (examine) by the doctor. 2. He couldn't use his office yesterday because it (paint). 3. The new program (test) for errors at two o'clock yesterday. 4. The telephone didn't work, it (to repair). 5. When they arrived, supper (to serve). 6. The fish (to cook), when David arrived. 7. Mary knew that she (to watch). 8. A new project (to discuss) when she came in. 9. The TV-set (to mend) when Sandra came. 10. Victor (to question) when the inspector came in.

**9. Open the brackets. Use the Present Perfect Passive.**

1. We (inform) about another accident at the plant. 2. This information (check) and reported to the boss. 3. So far, ten employees (fire) by the new director. 4. They (invite) to a boat party before. 5. He (see) in that house twice. 6. She (lock) in her apartment for three days already. 7. I (invite) to the theatre. 8. The article already (write). 9. The package already (bring). 10. My meal just (prepare) at the restaurant.

**10. Open the brackets. Use the Past Perfect Passive.**

1. By the time I returned, the work on the project had been finished. 2. The article (write) by midday. 3. The text (write) by Sunday. 4. The package (bring) before you came. 5. Many cars (repair) by George before he received his mechanic's license. 6. My car already (wash). 7. This flat (sell) before you called me. 8. The plan (discuss) for two hours when he came. 9. I noticed that a window (leave) open. 10. The house (clean) before they arrived.

**11. Open the brackets. Use the Future Perfect Passive.**

1. The house (clean) next week. 2. Come at 5 o'clock. The plan (discuss) at that time. 3. My car (wash). 4. This task (complete) before the deadline. 5. We (teach) Spanish next year. 6. The package (bring) by 10 o'clock tomorrow. 7. The article (write) by midday. 8. Dear clients! By this time tomorrow your telephone connection (restore) completely. 9. The text (translate) into Russian. 10. The telegram (send).

**12. Fill in by or with.**

1. The book was written ...this author. 2. He was hit on the head ...an umbrella. 3. She was woken up ...a loud noise. 4. This picture was painted ... famous artist. 5. My car was repaired ....my father. 6. This dessert was made ... fresh cream. 7. The window was broken ... a ball. 8. He was knocked down ... a car. 9. The pudding was made ... fruit and chocolate. 10. The city was attacked ... the enemy. 11. He was hit ... a handbag. 12. The house was built ... wood and bricks.

**13. Make these sentences negative.**

1. The letters will be sent soon. 2. Helen will be given a present on Sunday. 3. The final match will be played on Friday. 4. The article will be written in time. 5. The woman is taken to hospital. 7. Football is played all over the world. 8. She is often left at home. 9. The door was locked every night. 10. The letter will be received soon. 11. I was shown a new picture.

12. Yesterday all the tickets were sold out. 13. The library will be opened at 9 a.m. 14. The book was written by Dickens. 9. I was told an interesting story last week. 15. Breakfast is often cooked by my sister.

**14. Make these sentences interrogative.**

1. I am offered a nice present. 2. The shop is closed by the shop-assistant. 3. Parcels are posted every day. 4. Dictations are written once a week. 5. The question is answered well. 6. They are often seen in the garage. 7. The shop will be closed at 10 p.m. 8. You will be shown a lot of pictures there. 9. She is taken home in time. 10. The children are put to bed in time. 11. The watch was repaired yesterday. 12. The coats were left in the cloak-room. 13. I was given some roses. 14. The watch will be repaired tomorrow. 15. We are often told jokes.

**15. Give answers to the questions or statements according to the models.**

*a) Do people speak English in many countries? – Yes, English is spoken in many countries.*

1. Does he read a lot of books every day? 2. Do you speak only English in your English class? 3. Does she type letters every week? 4. Did he buy the car yesterday? 5. Did you complete the translation last Sunday? 6. Did you discuss this problem yesterday? 7. Did they solve the problem last week? 8. Did you watch the film last month?

*b) I can help you to translate the article. – Thank you. It's already been translated.*

1. I can help you to type the letters. 2. I can help you to bring the books. 3. I can help you to do the work. 4. I can help you to buy presents. 5. I can help you to clean the room.

*c) They've told Kate about that. – So she's been told.*

1. I've invited my friend to the party. 2. We've shown Tom around the town. 3. They've discussed the news. 4. He has written the novel. 5. They've built a new building near our house.

*d) Have they discussed the plan yet? – No, it's still being discussed.*

1. Have you built the house yet? 2. Has she written the book yet? 3. Has he translated the article yet? 4. Have they bought the books yet?

**16. Turn the following active constructions into passive.**

1. The children should obey their parents. 2. He can solve this sum. 3. You may use my pencil. 4. I could not help her. 5. We should respect our parents.

6. We would not help them. 7. She could not read the sentence. 8. Would you take a cup of coffee? 9. Could you lock the door? 10. We need not buy bread. 11. Can I use your umbrella? 12. Could you open the window?

**17. Turn the following active constructions into passive.**

1. We ask a lot of questions at the lessons. 2. We always invite him to our place. 3. They speak English here. 4. She usually writes letters in the evening. 5. They take many books from the library. 6. I always buy tickets for him. 7. Mother cooks dinner every day. 8. Collective farmers grow potatoes. 9. They told him about it. 10. We'll clean the room in time. 11. My mother always prepares dinner. 12. The police arrested the man. 13. The postman leaves the parcels in the hall. 14. They will bring the milk in the evening. 15. A famous designer will redecorate the hotel. 16. Someone is showing her new toys. 17. Somebody was looking for you 5 minutes ago. 18. They were discussing the problem.

**18. Turn the following active constructions into passive.**

1. Jane invited Fred to her birthday party last night. 2. My mother is preparing the dinner in the kitchen. 3. Our teachers have explained the English grammar. 4. Mary will visit her friends next month. 5. They send these parcels to me. 6. Henry ordered this train ticket for his brother. 7. The shop assistant handed these boxes to the customer. 8. Has she sent the Christmas cards to her family? 9. We keep this room tidy all the time. 10. John gave Ann some the flowers. 11. David bought some cups of tea to the visitors in the next room. 12. Diana discovered that this cotton was grown in Egypt. 13. We promise that the play will start on time. 14. We believed that Alex would pass the driving test. 15. They have persuaded me that they will go with me to the gym. 16. He told me that his football team had played well last season. 17. I must have the dentist check my teeth. 18. They have her tell the story again. 19. When I rang the door they were putting the child to bed. 20. The wind was blowing the clouds away. 21. Somebody was cleaning the room when I arrived. 22. They are building a new ring-road round the city. 23. He is always asking me for some money. 24. I didn't realize that somebody was recording our conversation. 25. Somebody is helping her with the housework. 26. The gardener has planted some trees. 27. They haven't invited Nick to the party. 28. The police have accused several people of the theft. 29. They have taken her to hospital. 30. I have cut my finger. 31. They will have translated the article by next week. 32. They will have packed the things by the evening.

**19. Translate into English.**

1. Что можно было с этим сделать? 2. На этот вопрос никто не ответил. 3. Книга была написана в сентябре. 4. Тот дом был построен в 2017 году. 5. Когда была сделана работа? 6. Моему брату дали 2 билета. 7. Эта работа будет закончена скоро. 8. Мне покажут его новый дом. 9. Этих вопросов не будет на экзамене. 10. Эту женщину найдут, не волнуйся! 11. Такие темы обсуждаться при всех не будут. 12. Эти упражнения будут переделаны. 13. Не мешай, ему сейчас все объясняют. 14. Это задание сейчас выполняют. 15. Ему как раз задают этот вопрос. 16. Её в данную минуту осматривает врач. 17. Теперь дом застраивается.

**20. Translate into English.**

1. Им сообщат эти новости, как только они вернутся домой. 2. Книги этого известного писателя переведены на многие языки. 3. Вопрос еще не решили, хотя он обсуждается с прошлого года. 4. Профессора слушали с таким вниманием, что никто не заметил, как я вошел. 5. Она сказала, что ей предложили другую должность. 6. Ее еще нет. Она еще на собеседовании. 7. За врачом надо было послать немедленно. 8. Мне очень подробно описали происшествие. 9. Ему надо идти. Его ждут. 10. С тех пор о ней ничего не слышали, не так ли? 11. На уроке студентам объяснили новое правило. 12. Он расстроился, что на его замечание не обратили внимания. 13. Я спросила, на кого из них можно положиться. 14. За билеты уже, должно быть, заплатили. 15. Мне показали человека, который был мне нужен. 16. Нам сказали, где экзаменуют этих студентов. 17. Он боялся, что над ним будут смеяться.

## THE MODAL VERBS

---

**1. Use the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

1. You (can't / mustn't / needn't) ask Alice how the new washing machine works. She never goes near one. 2. Tell Kate she (mustn't / can't / won't) walk home on her own. It will be dark and it's a lonely street. 3. The children (won't / can't / may) not eat chocolate right before lunch. 4. Sorry, but I (may / will / must) go now. My bus won't wait. 5. He (may / shall / can) play the guitar at the birthday party. Everybody will love to listen to him. 6. You

(can / may / must) have the newspaper. I've read it. 7. I (shan't / can't / won't) see anything. Are you sure there's a spot on that tie?

**2. Express agreement using the modal verb *Can*. Do it, as in the example.**

*E.g.:—Helen is a good pianist. — You are right. She can play the piano well.*

1. My friend is a good jumper. 2. My brother is a good swimmer. 3. He is a good skater. 4. Mary is a good singer. 5. Alex is a good dancer. 6. Mike is a good football player. 7. Mr. Brown is a good teacher. 8. My father is a good chess player. 9. My mother is a good cook. 10. Miss Smith is a good editor. 11. Mr. Brown is a good painter.

**3. Respond to the following questions.**

*E.g.:—Can you swim and dive?*

*— I can swim but I can't dive.*

1. Can she knit and sew? 2. Can the baby walk and run? 3. Can they dance and sing? 4. Can your children read and write? 5. Can he draw and paint? 6. Can you ski and skate? 7. Can your friend play tennis and cricket?

**4. Ask for additional information.**

*E.g.:— I can't play football, (what games)*

*— What games can you play?*

1. You can't take all these newspapers, (which newspapers) 2. They can't finish the work tonight, (when) 3. You can't keep the book long, (how, long) 4. I can't visit him tonight, (when) 5. We can't stay at this office, (where) 6. She can't help me. (why) 7. Nelson can't speak French, (who).

**5. Give true answers to the following questions.**

1. You can't play the piano, can you? 2. Can you ski? 3. You can skate, can't you? 4. Can you play football? 5. Can you visit me tomorrow? 6. Can you translate this text for me? 7. Can you help me with my English? 8. You can sing well, can't you? 9. Can you type some letters for me? 10. Can you buy a ticket for me?

**6. Say a) what you (the members of your family) were able to do and what you were not able to do some time ago, b) what you will be able to do and what you won't be able to do in the future (tomorrow, etc.)**

**7. Ask your friend: whether he/she was able to do his/her homework yesterday; if he/she was able to visit his/her parents last week; if he/she was able to pass the exam.**

**8. Respond using the modal verb Must.**

*E.g.:* – *The dress is nice, (buy).* – *You must buy it.*

1. Sam is ill. (visit) 2. Nancy is very busy, (help) 3. It's 8.30. (go to the university) 4. It's 8:00 o'clock, (have breakfast) 5. It's late, (go to bed) 6. You are tired, (have a rest) 7. The book is interesting, (read) 8. The bus is leaving in half an hour, (take a taxi) 9. It's 9 o'clock already, (get up).

*E.g.:* – *You've got a temperature, (go out)* – *You mustn't go out.*

1. It's too cold, (stay out long). 2. She is very busy now, (speak to her). 3. There are children in the room, (smoke). 4. It's Jane's pen, (take). 5. You have much homework for tomorrow, (watch TV). 6. Mary can do this work herself, (help).

**9. Give short answers to the following questions.**

*E.g.:* – *Must I help him?* – *Yes, you must/No, you needn't.*

1. Must I wait for you? 2. Must I copy the text? 3. Must we go there today? 4. Must I send them a fax? 5. Must I type the documents? 6. Must I come at 5 sharp? 7. Must I do it? 8. Must I phone the manager? 9. Must I get up so early? 10. Must we start at once? 11. Must I be present at the meeting?

**10. Ask general questions.**

*E.g.:* – *Mary is coming tonight, (meet)* – *Must I meet her?*

1. It's 9 o'clock, (start) 2. Jack is late, (wait) 3. There's no bread at home, (go to the baker's) 4. The windows are dirty, (wash) 5. The Browns are coming to dinner, (make a cake) 6. We've got too little food, (buy). 7. Alex is very busy, (help)

**11. Ask special questions.**

*E.g.:* – *We must meet at 8:00 (where)* – *Where must you meet?*

1. I must take my test soon (when). 2. He must work hard now (why). 3. He must come to the plant (when). 4. I must get up early (why). 5. We must do something about these letters (what). 6. You must go to work on Saturday (why) 7. We must leave (why) 8. We must finish the work soon (when). 9. Somebody must help him with the car (who).

**12. Give short answers to the following questions.**

*E.g.:* – *Will Jack have to repeat the course?* – *No, he won't.*

1. Have they had time to swim? 2 Didn't he have to pay for the damage? 3. May Jenny go out with us tonight? 4. Could the doctor help him? 5. Won't you be able to repair the roof? 6. Has Susie been allowed to come yet?

7. Was she allowed to come last year? 8. Does it have to be pork again? 9. Must I really eat the bread soup? 10. Need I bring something? 11. Did they do the dishes as I told them? 12. Am I not the luckiest guy on earth?

**13. Fill in the blanks with CAN / CAN'T or COULD / COULDN'T.**

1. You ... wash this skirt but you ... iron it. If you iron it you'll spoil it.  
 2. Excuse me. ... you show me the way to the university? 3. You ... park your car here. 4. ... you close the window, please? It's getting cold. 5. ... I smoke here? No, you ... . This is a non-smoker. 6. ... I turn up the volume? This is my favourite song. – Of course you ... . 7. You ... cross the street here. If you do you'll be fined. 8. ... you help me with this grammar rule, please. I don't understand it. 9. I wonder if I ... return the book a bit later, please? I'm sorry but you ... . Many people have already asked for it. 10. You are my friend ... you tell me what to do in this situation?

**14. Fill in the blanks with CAN in the correct form.**

1. David is learning English. Now he ... speak English well but he hopes that he ... speak English well in a year. 2. I know I ... drive a car well unless I have much practice. 3. Last year Kate ... type as well as she ... this year. 4. Ted ... play the piano but he is taking lessons and his teacher says that he ... play the piano soon. 5. A year ago I ... afford to buy a new flat as I didn't have enough money. Fortunately I ... afford a new flat now. 6. I ... find a proper present for her yesterday but I believe I ... do it tomorrow. 7. I ... take part in this competition but I'm sure I ... take part in the next competition. 8. I'm afraid I ... give you advice now. I'm not an expert in this field. But I'll ask my friend and then I ... advise you something. 9. ... you entertain so many guests? It's always a problem with me. I ... never do it.

**15. Translate into English.**

1. Это платье нельзя стирать в стиральной машине. 2. Он сможет ответить на эти вопросы, только когда просмотрит отчет. 3. Она говорит, что не смогла повторить правила. 4. Думаю, мне удастся объяснить ему, что они не правы. 5. Неужели она такая упрямая? 6. Неужели он верит в такую ерунду? 7. Не может быть, чтобы она была такой злой. 8. Она просит разрешения уйти. – Ей пока нельзя уходить. 9. Могу я позвонить тебе позже? 10. Вы не подскажете, где я могу купить книги? 11. Я могу купить что-нибудь к обеду. 12. Я не смогу закончить перевод к среде. 13. Она умела хорошо плавать, когда ей было 7 лет. 14. Ты умел говорить по-английски в школе? 15. Где мы можем встретиться?

16. Сколько раз в неделю ты сможешь брать уроки музыки? 17. Ты можешь рассказать мне все подробно? 18. Нельзя читать в темноте. 19. Вы не могли бы мне перезвонить? 20. Я не могу это понять.

### 16. Choose between MAY and MIGHT.

1. ... I come in? (request) -Yes, you ... . (permission). 2. It's unfair that he doesn't know the truth. You ... tell him everything.(reproach) 3. He ... know about it himself. (a suggestion) 4. He is waiting for you. You ... put off your work for some time. (reproach) 5. ... we leave our things here? (a polite request) 6. He ... not understand English. (a possibility) 7. You know he is ill. You ... go and visit him. (reproach) 8. Where are you going to spend your vacation?— I don't know yet. I ... go to Spain. (possibility) 9. After school he ... go to University. (suggestion) 10. ... I talk to him right now? The matter is urgent. (a polite request)

### 17. Translate into English.

1. Возможно, они придут позже. 2. Могли бы показать мне эту картину? 3. Можно мне войти? – Нет. 4. Может быть, он сейчас дома. 5. Не мог бы я оставить здесь свои вещи? 6. Могли бы и объяснить ему это правило. 7. Возможно, мы знаем её. 8. Ты можешь брать мою машину, когда она тебе нужна. 9. Наверное, это не его адрес. 10. Это может быть Фрэнк.

### 18. Translate into English.

1. Я должен знать, что происходит. 2. Неужели ты действительно должен делать это за неё? 3. Сколько дней он должен там провести? 4. Вам придется напомнить им об этом разговоре. 5. Они вынуждены были отложить отъезд (departure). 6. Когда я был маленьким, мне часто приходилось оставаться дома одному. 7. Я надеюсь, я не должен буду отвечать на их вопросы. 8. Мы должны сделать для него все, что мы можем. 9. Она должна была подумать прежде, чем ответить на мой вопрос. 10. Если ты туда пойдешь, я должен буду сопровождать тебя. 11. Должна сказать тебе, что ты не прав.

### 19. Fill in the blanks with MUST, NEED, TO HAVE TO.

1. I have this newspaper myself. You ... bring yours to show me the article. 2. You ... cross the road at the red light. 3. We've got plenty of time. We ... take a taxi. 4. If you want to stay in this country for a long time you ... have a visa. 5. I ... buy a new book. They gave me the book as a birthday present.

6. You ... drive on the left in Russia . 7. ... I tell her the truth? – No, you ... . It isn't necessary at all. 8. You ... say such things in other people's presence. 9. He ... make any decisions. She decides everything for him. 10. You ... look for a present. I know what to give him. 11. You ... make her change her mind. She ... give up her studies. 12. I'd better ask them for help. – Oh, you ... .We'll manage to do it ourselves. 13. You ... believe him. He is a liar. Everybody knows it.14. You ... tell him what to do. She seems to know the job well. 15. He ... apologise. I'm not angry with them. 16. I ... apologise. It wasn't my fault.

## 20. Translate into English.

1. Вам не нужно ему звонить. Я вам все объясню. 2. Ты должен отдохнуть. Нельзя продолжать работу, если ты устал. 3. Тебе не нужно покупать билеты Я уже купила два билета. 4. Все же ты должен будешь заплатить за разбитое окно. 5. Нам можно не торопиться. У нас еще есть время. 6. Вам не нужно провожать его на станцию. Я сам его провожу. 7. Мне не пришлось его будить. Он сам проснулся. 8. Вы хотите, чтобы я пришла пораньше? – Нет, не нужно. 9. Ты считаешь, я должен быть ему благодарен? – Да. 10. Ей не нужно больше здесь оставаться, если она не хочет. 11. Не нужно обо мне беспокоиться. Подумайте о себе. 12. Не нужно об этом рассказывать, если вам не хочется.

## 21. Change the sentences below using SHOULD / SHOULDN'T.

*Model: He has lost his dog. (he, to put an advertisement in the paper)*

1. She says she won't be able to organize the party herself(you, to help her). 2. They refuse to take part in the competition(they, to give their reasons for it). 3. I phoned him last night and he was already in bed. (you, not to phone him so late in future). 4. He spend all days in the sun trying to get a tan. (tell him to be careful). 5. She is drinking the fifth cup of coffee. (tell her not to drink so much coffee). 6. They are going on a hike. But the weather is awful. (they, not to go on a hike in such rainy weather). 7. The doctor says my nerves are bad. (you, to go to a health resort). 8. I understand that he is wrong. (tell him not to hush things up).10. They are going on holiday. (they, not to take much luggage).

## 22. Translate into English.

1. Неужели это правда? 2. Возможно, они знают об этом. 3. Детям не следует есть много сладкого. 4. Ей приходится много работать, поэтому она ложится спать поздно. 5. Я думаю, тебе следует чаще их навещать.

6. Вам опять придется прийти послезавтра. 7. Мне предстоит встретиться с ней на этой неделе. 8. Моя машина сломалась, и мне пришлось ехать на такси. 9. Вы должны были написать это сочинение еще на прошлой неделе. 10. Не может быть, чтобы он был дома.

### 23. Change the following sentences using **MAY** or **CAN**.

*Model: 1. Perhaps he is working. 2. Is it possible that he is working?*

1. Perhaps she is having lunch. 2. Perhaps it is true. 3. Perhaps they didn't know about it. 4. Perhaps he has fallen ill. 5. Perhaps he has lost the telephone number. 6. Perhaps he has done it on purpose. 7. Is it possible that she has been thinking about it the whole day today. 8. Perhaps they are playing football in the yard. 9. Perhaps she has been staying at home all this time. 10. Is it possible that he has been working in the garden all this time? 11. Perhaps his wife has asked them to come.

### 24. Use **MIGHT** to express reproach.

*Model: I haven't done it.*

1. I didn't phone her yesterday. 2. They didn't tell us the truth. 3. I didn't wait for you. 4. We didn't meet him at the airport. 5. She hasn't answered his letter. 6. I haven't packed the things yet. 7. She didn't tell us about their arrival. 8. I didn't explain anything to him. 9. He hasn't returned her the money yet. 10. I didn't speak to him yesterday.

### 25. Translate into English.

1. Наверное, они знают об этом. 2. Возможно, она тебе не солгала. 3. Может быть, их вчера не было в городе. 4. Возможно, они все еще обсуждают эту книгу. 5. Наверное, они ушли погулять. 6. Возможно ли, чтобы он лгал нам все это время? 7. Мог бы и помочь нам вчера. 8. Могли бы и предупредить их заранее. 9. Наверное, она все еще загорает. 10. Могли бы сразу показать нам это сообщение.

### 26. Complete the following situations using **MUST**.

*Model: She is so angry with him. (he, to say something wrong)*

1. Sara isn't his usual self today. (she, to be nervous). 2. We didn't meet yesterday. (we, to put off the meeting). 3. I am tired. (I, to have a rest, now). 4. He didn't stop to talk. (he, to be in a hurry). 5. They haven't phoned yet. (they, to take the exam, now) 6. Don't disturb the father (he, to fix the bicycle, for two hours already). 7. She is in the kitchen. (she, to do the washing up/now). 8. The children are upset. (their parents, not to buy the

toy, they wanted to get). 9. She says she has a lot to do today (she, not to translate the article yesterday). 10. We are in the living-room. (we, to watch TV now). 11. He knows the town well (he, to live, here, all his life).

### 27. Translate into English.

1. Она должна была ответить на его письмо. 2. Вы, должно быть, ответили на наше письмо. 3. Я должна была встретить друга. 4. Они, должно быть, встретили её родителей. 5. Мы должны были навестить ее вечером. 6. Она, должно быть, навестила его вечером. 7. Он должен был исправить ошибки. 8. Она, должно быть, исправила ошибки. 9. Он должен был купить цветы. 10. Он, должно быть, купил цветы.

### 28. Translate into English.

1. Они, вероятно, никогда здесь раньше не были. 2. Должно быть, он спросил её об этом. 3. Она, наверняка, приехала рано утром. 4. Они, вероятно, все еще ждут нас. 5. Дети, должно быть, бегают сейчас в парке. 6. Вероятно, его машина все же сломалась. 7. Должно быть, они уже давно знакомы. 8. Они, вероятно, играют во дворе. 9. Она, должно быть, никогда здесь раньше не была. 10. Он, по-видимому, ничего не читал об этом. 11. Они, должно быть, друзья. 12. Этот человек, должно быть, уже полчасика ищет свою собаку. 13. Она, по-видимому, все еще гостит у друзей.

### 29. Complete the following situations using NEEDN'T or DIDN'T HAVE TO.

*Model: Why did you clean the whole flat yourself. I could help you. You ...*

1. I've bought you an ice-cream. – But I have a sore throat. You ... . 2. I've come to get the books. – We could have brought them to you ourselves. You ... . 3. I've made an apple-pie. – Well, I've also made one. You ... . 4. It was warm. We were walking without our warm coats on. We ... . 5. I left the house very early yesterday and had to wait for Clark for a long time. I ... . 6. Why did you carry all these bags yourself? I could have helped you. You ... . 7. The task didn't take me much time. The teacher asked us to translate only the first part of the text. I... 8. Why did you order so much food? We are not that hungry. You... 9. It wasn't a formal party so nobody was wearing ties. The guests... 10. Why did you ask him for money? I have some. You... .

### 30. Complete the following situations using SHOULD.

*Model: He didn't apologise for his rude behaviour. – They are still angry with him. He ... .*

1. They went to the mountains last month and it affected their health.
2. He stayed in the sun too long yesterday and today he feels bad.
3. They didn't warn us that they would arrive. We didn't expect them.
4. She didn't tell us anything about her intentions. We weren't prepared.
5. We followed them and it was our mistake. They got angry.
6. I know I behaved badly to her. Now she doesn't want to talk to me.
7. I left the party without saying "good-bye". – It was so impolite.
8. We couldn't keep silent. It was a mistake.
9. It's a pity you didn't come to my birthday party. – I was upset.
10. She has given up jogging in the morning. – It's bad.

### 31. Translate into English.

1. Скажи Кейт, что ей следует быть аккуратнее. Ты же знаешь, как неаккуратно она водит машину.
2. Не было необходимости повторять это дважды. Я сразу все поняла.
3. Не стоит обращать внимание на её слова. Она не всегда думает, прежде чем что-нибудь сказать.
4. Сегодня не нужно готовить обед. Друг пригласил меня в кафе.
5. Тебе следовало перезвонить родителям. Они ждал твоего звонка целый день вчера.
6. Врач говорит, Вам следует лежать в постели.
7. Ей следовало купить билеты заранее.
8. Не следует сажать цветы здесь.
9. Вам надо было последовать моему совету. Теперь у Вас проблемы.
10. Ему следует больше тренироваться. Он плохо играет.

### 32. Choose the modal verb.

1. I've made a cake. – You (needn't have bothered / didn't have to bother).
2. I can't help you now. You (should have / must have) told me everything at once.
3. I like both houses. I (can't / couldn't) decide which one I like more.
4. We know everything. You (needn't / mustn't) bother to tell more lies.
5. If your eyes are so bad you (are to / should) wear glasses.
6. (Can/may) he have spent all his money? He got his pay only yesterday.
7. I think I (can / will be able to) call on you next week.
8. They (needn't have bought / didn't have to buy) new skates for the child. The parents had given them a pair of skates.
9. I'm not sure where she is. She (may have / can have) gone shopping.
10. He has got a lot to do this week. He (will have / will be able) to work on Sunday.
11. We (are to / have to) meet at the club.
12. She is in the garden. She (must be / may be) planting something.
13. There were few people there. I (didn't have to wait / needn't have waited) long.
14. You can't wear such clothes in the office. You (are to / have to) wear a suit.
15. We are looking for a house. It (mustn't / needn't) necessarily be large.
16. You (shouldn't have / needn't have) touched it. It's not yours.

**33. Rephrase the following situations using an appropriate modal verb.**

1. I insist that you do your homework. You ... do your homework. 2. He can hear you well enough. You ... shout. 3. Talking is not permitted during the exam. You ... talk during the exam. 4. It isn't right to speak to your father like that. You... speak to your father like that. 5. It isn't possible for her to come to the party. She ... come to the party. 6. He is obliged to go to the police station once a week. He ... to go to the police station once a week. 7. It's forbidden to feed the animals in the Zoo. You ... feed the animals in the Zoo. 8. It's necessary to dust the furniture. You ... dust the furniture. 9. Would you mind if I read your book? ... I read your book? 10. Perhaps they'll come with us. They ... come with us. 11. Would you mind if I use your glasses? ... I use your glasses? 12. Let's try doing this exercise. ... we try doing this exercise. 13. He can do it himself. Why ...he ask anybody for help? 14. Perhaps, she will phone them today. She ... phone them today. 15. Why don't you go to the sea for a holiday? You ... go to the sea for a holiday. 16. Would you like me to help you with the dishes? ... I help you with the dishes?

## THE MOOD

---

**1. Point out the verbs in the following sentences and name their moods and tenses.**

1. The river flows under the bridge. 2. I will do the work tonight. 3. He told me that he had finished the work. 4. God bless you! 5. I am hoping to get a rise soon. 6. Do sit down. 7. I wish I had passed the test. 8. I would rather you stayed till tomorrow. 9. I will have plenty of time tomorrow. 10. Be nice, sweet child. 11. It has been raining since last night. 12. He takes great pride in his work. 13. It is time we started. 14. By this time tomorrow I will have reached my home.

**2. Define the types of Commands (Imperative Mood).**

*E.g.: Let's go out to dinner tonight (request). Finish your homework (command). Do not reply to this message (command). Remember to take out the trash (command).*

1. Pay your bills on time. 2. Walk the dog before it starts raining. 3. Don't talk with your mouth full of food. 4. Stop arguing with your brother. 5. Please, refrain from cell phone use during instructional time. 6. Hold the door, please. 7. Stop the car, will you? 8. Let's go to the grocery store before we go home. 9. Let's listen to what the speaker has to say because it may be important.

### **3. Translate the sentences.**

1. Wake up! 2. You do not call me that early! 3. Come to me, please! 4. Do not share this information with him, please! 5. Please, give me some money! 6. Let him behave this way! 7. Let them help you! 8. Let us join them! 9. Let us play football! 10. Let it be! 11. Let me go to my room. 12. Let us go to my room. 13. Let him go to my room. 14. Let us play volley-ball! 15. Let's go to the cinema tonight. 16. Let me do it myself. 17. Don't let my brother read the letter. 18. Don't let him smoke here! 19. Don't be late. 20. Do not forget. 21. Do not make that mistake again. 22. Do not fail to be there. 23. Don't be so noisy. 24. Bring me my spectacles, will you? 25. Just give me some money, will you? 26. Please stop talking. 27. Translate the following text in the written form. 28. You leave us alone! 29. Nobody move! 30. Don't leave me alone! 31. Open the window. 32. Show me the letter, please. 33. Let him answer! 34. Let's (let us) begin!

### **4. Subjunctive or Indicative Mood?**

1. I recommend that he arrive at the university on time every day. 2. It's wonderful that he arrives at the university on time every day. 3. It's wonderful that I arrive the university on time every day. 4. They recommend that I arrive at the university on time every day. 5. They recommend that we arrive at the university on time every day. 6. It's wonderful that we arrive at the university on time every day. 7. It's wonderful that you arrive at the university on time every day. 8. It's wonderful that they arrive at the university on time every day. 9. I recommend that they arrive at the university on time every day. 10. I recommend that you arrive at the university on time every day.

### **5. Write the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. I should be delighted if I (to have) such a beautiful dress. 2. If it (to rain), they will have to stay at home. 3. If you (to work) hard, you would have achieved great progress. 4. If it is not too cold, he (not to put) on his coat. 5. She (to write) the composition long ago if she had not disturbed him.

6. If you (not to read) so much, you would not be so clever. 7. If my mother (to be) at home, she will tell us what to do. 8. If he were not such an outstanding actor, he (not to have) so many admirers. 9. If they (to give) us their address, they will write a letter. 10. If he (not to be) so absent-minded, he would be a much better student.

**6. Complete the following sentences using the appropriate form of the verb.**

1. If I (miss/I'll miss) the bus this afternoon, I'll get a taxi instead. 2. We'll have to go without Fred if he (doesn't arrive/won't arrive) soon. 3. They (won't refund/ didn't refund) your money if you haven't kept your receipt. 4. Will you send me a postcard when you (reach/you'll reach) France? 5. If I make some coffee, do you cut/will you cut the cake? 6. If you (don't complain/didn't complain) so much, you might be more popular. 7. Please don't sign any contracts before I'm (checking/I've checked) them. 8. (Weren't my friends/ Wouldn't my friends) be envious if they could only see me now!

**7. Change the sentences according to the model.**

*Model: Boris isn't polite that's why he behaves like that. -If Boris were polite he wouldn't behave like that.*

1. Henry won't come to my birthday party. I am upset. 2. Jane never keeps her word. I don't believe her. 3. We think that swimming is useful that's why we go to the swimming pool four times a week. 4. He is tired. He can't join us. 5. Kate has got work to do. She refuses to go for a walk. 6. My brother doesn't go in for sports, which is why he falls ill often. 7. She can't afford a holiday this summer. She won't go to the seaside. 8. Nina isn't ready. We'll go without her. 9. Tom is selfish, and that is the reason why he has no friends. 10. Sally doesn't walk much that's why she feels bad. 11. They can't afford a new car that's why they use the old one. 12. She is cross with you because you can't behave properly.

**8. Translate into English.**

1. Если бы погода была хорошая, они бы пошли гулять. 2. Если бы я знал её номер, я бы её сейчас позвонил. 3. Если бы у него было время, он бы покатался на велосипеде. 4. Если бы она не так устала, она бы пошла со мной. 5. Если бы дом не был таким большим, он бы не продавался. 6. Если бы не шел дождь, мы бы поехали загород. 7. Я бы поговорил с ними, если бы знал китайский. 8. Он бы принял участие в соревновании, если бы чувствовал себя лучше. 9. Если бы у меня сей-

час были с собой деньги, я бы купил эту книгу. 10. Если бы ты представила меня ему, я была бы тебе благодарна.

### 9. Make sentences using subjunctive mood.

*Model: He was rude to her yesterday that's why they quarrelled. -If he hadn't been rude to her yesterday they wouldn't have quarrelled.*

1. I couldn't get her on the phone that was why I didn't tell her the news. 2. As so many years had passed she couldn't recognize him. 3. The team had a lot of practice, as a result they won. 4. She advised me to take an umbrella. 5. He didn't have time yesterday that was why he didn't stay to dinner. 6. She threw away some important papers which made me angry. 7. As we had a lot of luggage they took a taxi. 8. It was your carelessness that led to an accident. 9. You should have explained to her how to get here. I think she has lost his way. 10. As we had left the camera at home they didn't take pictures.

### 10. Translate into English.

1. Если бы она сразу сказала правду, они бы тебе помогли. 2. Он бы присоединился к вам тогда, если бы не заболел. 3. Если бы я его встретила, он бы не заблудился. 4. Если бы она не одолжила мне денег, я бы не смог купить машину. 5. Если бы он зашел ко мне в прошлую пятницу, я бы познакомила тебя с моими родственниками. 6. Мы могли бы добиться успеха, если бы постарались. 7. Если бы Тим не отобрал игрушку у Вилли, они бы не подрались. 8. Они бы не отказались отвезти нас на станцию вчера, если бы не торопились. 9. Если бы я вызвала полицию, она бы его арестовала. 10. Он бы не пришёл, если бы я не попросила.

### 11. Change the sentences according to the model.

*Model: She is absent-minded. She missed the bus again yesterday. – If she weren't absent-minded she wouldn't have missed the train again yesterday.*

1. I am selfish, that's why I said it. 2. She is very busy that's why she didn't help her mother yesterday. 3. I know him very well that's why I stopped all relations with him long ago. 4. He studies hard and has achieved great results. 5. The book is interesting. I've read it twice. 6. She is a good doctor. She has helped a lot of people. 7. We have a lot of practice. We have set a new record. 8. He is lazy, that's why he didn't go there yourself. 9. The summer is cold, that's why they haven't gone to the country. 10. I don't like going by train, that's why I went there by bus.

### 12. Translate into English.

1. Если бы она был ответственным человеком, она бы давно все сделал. 2. Если бы этот компьютер работал, я бы ее давно включил. 3. Если бы эта река была чистая, они бы давно в ней искупались. 4. Если бы я любила такой шоколад, я бы давно его съела. 5. Он бы давно все сделал, если бы знал, как это делать. 6. Я бы надела вчера это платье, если бы у меня были к нему туфли. 7. Если бы все не критиковали этот фильм, я бы его давно посмотрела. 8. Если бы лето не было таким жарким, они бы вчера не стали здесь купаться. 9. Если бы она умела водить, она бы давно купила себе машину. 10. Если бы ты умела играть в баскетбол, ты бы присоединилась к нам.

### 13. Translate into English.

1. Он сказал, что если бы погода сейчас была хорошая, они бы пошли гулять. 2. Она сказала, что если бы автобус не опоздал, они бы уже были дома. 4. Я объяснил, что если бы я любила такой шоколад, я бы его уже съел. 5. Его мать сказала, что если бы ее сын был ответственным человеком, он бы уже закончил работу. 6. Они сказали, что если бы они понимали суть проблемы, они бы нам помогли. 7. Он сказал, что если бы у него был их адрес, он послал бы им приглашение. 8. Если бы ты позвонил ей заранее, мы бы сейчас знали, когда она придет. 9. Тебе не пришлось бы теперь занимать денег, если бы ты не потратил все на цветы. 10. Если бы ты окончил университет, у тебя была бы сейчас хорошая работа. 11. Если бы вы посмотрели это слово в словаре, вы бы знали, как оно пишется. 12. Если бы ты купила то платье, то могла бы его сейчас надеть.

### 14. Change the following sentences using IF I WERE YOU.

*Model: I don't accept his invitation. – I didn't accept his invitation. – If I were you I would accept his invitation. If I were you I would have accepted his invitation.*

1. I didn't read this newspaper. 2. I don't learn English. 3. I eat a lot of cakes and ice-cream. 4. I took a taxi to get there. 5. I don't play the cricket. 6. I didn't go to the sea last summer. 7. I write the composition. 8. I didn't tell him the news. 9. I didn't get that parcel. 10. I always help my mother.

### 15. Translate into English.

1. Если бы не его преподаватель, он бы не говорил по-английски свободно. 2. Если бы не мой друг, я не знал бы правду. 3. Если бы не его

рассеянность, он бы достиг большого успеха. 4. Если бы не болезнь, мы бы поехали отдыхать в прошлом месяце. 5. Если бы не этот случай, мы бы не встретились и не поженились. 7. Если бы не жара, она бы чувствовала себя лучше. 8. Если бы не поддержка его жены, он бы не написал эту книгу. 9. Если бы не мои родители, я бы не нашла работу. 10. Если бы не мои дети, я не был бы счастлив.

### 16. Make sentences using I WISH.

*Model: He can't speak French. – I wish he could speak French.*

1. We aren't at home now. 2. This student often misses classes. 3. We don't often go to the museum. 4. This is not my bag. 5. The weather is bad. 6. I don't know her address. 7. I don't have a flat in the country. 8. I'm not with them now. 9. This fur-coat costs a lot. 10. The food here is rather bad.

### 17. Translate into English.

1. Жаль, что я не знаю её адрес. 2. Жаль, что родители живут далеко от нас. 3. Жаль, что сейчас не лето. 4. Жаль, что я не понимаю это правило. 5. Жаль, что я не умею водить машину. 6. Жаль, что у него нет компьютера. 7. Жаль, что вы не любите читать. 8. Жаль, что я не умею петь. 9. Были бы эти студенты более ответственными. 10. Был бы у меня дом на Мальдивах! 11. Было бы сегодня тепло! 12. Знала бы я номер его телефона! 13. Умели бы они хорошо танцевать! 14. Жили бы мы в Париже! 15. Жаль, что никто не может мне помочь. 16. Были бы у неё длинные волосы.

### 18. Make sentences using I WISH.

*Model: I went to the cinema yesterday. – I wish I hadn't gone to the cinema.*

1. He has drunk too much coffee today. He feels sick. 2. We bought a new flat last month. 3. We didn't recognize them. 4. I didn't go to the mountains last year. 5. She asked me for help. 6. It rained the whole day yesterday. 7. My computer didn't work last week. 8. There were many people in the garden yesterday. 9. I saw the accident happen. 10. He didn't visit the doctor yesterday.

### 19. Translate into English.

1. Жаль, что они потратили так много времени. 2. Жаль, что я не купила ту сумку. 3. Жаль, что её не было дома. 4. Жаль, что моя подруга в то время болела. 5. Жаль, что студенты отсутствовали. 6. Жаль, что эта

чашка разбилась. 7. Жаль, что мы не встретились вчера. 7. Жаль, что тебе потребовалось много времени, чтобы перевести эту статью. 8. Жаль, что вы не ходили в театр вчера. 9. Жаль, что она бросила учебу. 10. Жаль, что он мало читал в юности.

## 20. Translate into English.

1. Если бы не ты, не знаю, что бы сейчас со мной было. 2. Если бы не он, Мария не поехала бы в Лондон. 3. Если бы не дождь, я был бы за городом. 4. Она сказал, что если бы знала эту песню, то присоединилась бы к нам сейчас. 5. Если бы не твоя помощь, я бы не стала завтра ходить по магазинам. 6. Если бы я тебе не доверял, я бы не обратился к тебе за помощью. 7. Хотелось бы, чтобы вы обсуждали это вопрос. 8. Если бы она сдала экзамен на отличную оценку, она была бы счастлива. 9. Хотелось бы, чтобы вы тут не шумели. 10. Жаль, что вы не видели эту выставку сами. 11. Жаль, что у него нет ключей. 12. Если бы не наши усилия, ничто не изменилось бы.

## THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB (THE VERBALS).

---

### THE PARTICIPLE

---

**1. Form Participle I Indefinite Active from the following verbs. Pay attention to the spelling rules.**

- a) to write, to make, to solve, to have, to translate, to take, to save, to arrive, to leave, to choose, to come;
- b) to get, to swim, to cut, to permit, to cancel, to refer, to sit, to stir, to dig, to put, to stop, to plan, to compel;
- c) to stay, to cry, to die, to dry, to lie, to try, to buy, to carry, to play, to hurry, to fly, to tie, to study.

**2. Put the forms of Participle I from the list below into the correct column.**

Having gone, having been sent, smoking, being built, having lived, having been stopped, discharging, being delivered, having collected, being packed,

leaving, being carried, reading, having been sorted, having fulfilled, having been bought, being asked.

Indefinite Active	Indefinite Passive	Perfect Active	Perfect Passive

### 3. Write all the forms of the participle of the following verbs.

To cut, to begin, to study, to tie, to give, to charter, to stop, to ship, to deliver.

### 4. Choose the correct form of Participle I.

1. I heard you *coming* / *having come* round the corner of the garage.  
 2. *Having discussed* / *Being discussed* everything, we began packing.  
 3. She went off *having left* / *leaving* the child alone.  
 4. The rain *having come*, coming down fast now, we were soon wet through.  
 5. *Giving up* / *Having given up* all hope, she left her parents' flat.  
 6. In a couple of minutes Mike was back again, *leading* / *being lead* his little sister by the hand.  
 7. *Having slept* / *sleeping* worse that night, Jane got up rather early.  
 8. The acts *examining* / *having been examined*, we came to the conclusion that the problem was more serious than we had thought.  
 9. *Finishing* / *Having finished* one exercise, he started another.  
 10. *Having cheated* / *Having been cheated* once before, he is very careful now.

### 5. Form Participle II from the following verbs. Pay attention to the spelling rules.

To fix, to see, to admire, to write, to break, to prescribe, to treat, to feel, to watch, to hear, to notice, to deny, to clean, to terrify, to post, to make, to develop, to fill, to close, to pay, to put, to change, to keep, to install, to read, to study.

### 6. Choose either Participle I or Participle II.

1. The trip turned out to be extremely (tired / tiring).  
 2. I'm terribly (tiring / tired). Please make me a cup of tea.  
 3. I was (boring / bored) to death.  
 4. The conference was rather (boring / bored).  
 5. Your suggestion is quite (interesting / interested). We'll consider it.  
 6. I was very (confusing / confused) by his explanation.  
 7. Everybody was (charmed / charming) by her beauty.  
 8. I don't like horror films. They are (frightened / frightening).  
 9. They found his jokes rather (amused / amusing).  
 10. Don't tell the children

such (frightened / frightening) stories. 11. The results of the exam were rather (disappointing / disappointed). 12. Do you know the family (living / lived) next door? 13. There was a woman (worn / wearing) a black hat. 14. They were (terrified / terrifying) at what they saw. 15. Everybody seemed (relaxing / relaxed) and happy. 16. Tom says his job is (boring / bored). 17. He stared at Jenny, (puzzling / puzzled). 18. The news made us (depressing / depressed). 19. I was frightfully (thrilling / thrilled) at the idea of visiting that castle. 20. What is most (annoyed / annoying), she left without saying a word.

**7. Determine the function of Participle I in the following sentences. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. The noise of planes taking off was making it impossible for them to hear one another. 2. Broadly speaking, our society is divided into three social classes, the majority of us being middle-class. 3. His confusion was touching. 4. Julia spent a happy morning in bed reading the Sunday papers. 5. They heard Michael whistling in the passage. 6. Julia was sitting in her bedroom reading a novel. 7. Supposing he claimed acquaintance with her there, how on earth was she going to explain him to her friends? 8. I saw her photographing the peacock. 9. Having bought the tickets and left the luggage at the bus station, the Smiths decided to visit their friends. 10. Being invited he said he would not come to our party. 11. I'll lend you the money providing you pay it back before next Monday. 12. After having been restored the building looked very fine. 13. The man standing by the schedule was our English teacher a year ago. 14. The meeting being held at the University is very interesting. 15. She was seen walking in the park. 16. A truck carrying two hundred dinners was lost in the snow.

**8. Translate the words in brackets using Participle I as an attribute.**

1. We came up to the old man (стоявший на углу) and asked him the way. 2. A new power plant (снабжающий электричеством) to four districts was built there. 3. They looked at the (летевший самолет). 4. The boy (играющий в саду) is my son. 5. People (приезжающие в Лондон) visit different museums. 6. They saw (летающего орла). 7. (Восходящее солнце) was hidden by the clouds. 8. Go to the policeman (стоящий там) and ask him to show you the way. 9. The man (курящий сигарету), is her brother. 10. Mary picked up the letter (лежавшее на полу). 11. The building (строящееся на нашей улице) is a new museum.

**9. Translate the words in brackets using Participle I as an adverbial modifier.**

1. (Приехав на вокзал), she went to the ticket office and bought a single ticket. 2. (Зная хорошо английский язык), she translated the text without a dictionary. 3. He sat on the sofa (читая газету). 4. (Идя домой), she met her brother. 5. (Прожив в городе много лет), he knew it very well. 6. (Приезжая в Мельбурн), we put up our tents. 7. (Пропутешествовав по Европе) for a month, she returned to New York. 8. They kept silent (находясь под впечатлением) by the film. 9. (Переводя эту статью), he came across a lot of difficulties. 10. He spent the whole day (читая книгу).

**10. Translate the words in brackets using Participle I as a predicative.**

1. The student's answer (разочаровал). 2. The effect of his confession (был страшен). 3. The expression on her face (было трогательным). 4. The landscape (был ужасающим). 5. His explanation (довольно запутанное). 6. First impressions (являются самыми длительными).

**11. Translate the words in brackets using Participle I as part of a complex object.**

1. Lara pointed at the plane (летевший в небе). 2. He heard someone (входил в зал). 3. We reached the road (ведущей в город). 4. We saw her (переходила дорогу). 5. I saw him (бежал). 6. I heard her (кричала). 7. They watched him slowly (подходил к двери). 8. We saw James (искал что-то) на полу. 9. Lily saw them (шли по берегу реки). 10. I heard her (плакала).

**12. Translate the words in brackets using Participle I as part of a compound verbal predicate.**

1. She was seen (бежала по дороге). 2. Jess was heard (ссорилась с братом). 3. We were kept (ждать час или более того). 4. Lily was seen (входила) but no one saw her (выходила). 5. The child was seen (перелазил через забор). 6. She was noticed (опоздала на урок). 7. The children were seen (играли в футбол во дворе). 8. I was kept (ждать почти час). 9. They were caught (воровали яблоки в саду). 10. Thomas was heard (кричал на жену) before the robbery.

**13. Translate the words in brackets using Participle I as parenthesis.**

1. (Честно говоря), I have no time. 2. (Судя по ее реакции), she didn't like the present. 3. (Мягко говоря), this is illegal. 4. (Строго говоря), that question was not a question of dispute at all. 5. (Вообще говоря), men can

run faster than women. 6. (Грубо говоря), it's not your business. 7. (Принимая все во внимание), I should say she's right.

**14. Determine the function of Participle II in the following sentences. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. People treated in hospitals are called patients. 2. Could I have the visa extended? 3. At least a hundred flights were delayed, some by many hours. 4. A broken plate was lying on the table. 5. The answer received from the sellers surprised us. 6. A tonometer is an instrument used for measuring blood pressure. 7. The pencil is broken. 8. When asked whether she intended to return soon, she replied that she would be away for about four months. 9. He wants the work done immediately. 10. I must have my luggage sent to the station. 11. Unless tested the medicine must not be used in treatment. 12. As seen from this article these cars are produced at our plants. 13. Frightened by the noise of the thunder the child began crying. 14. Though crushed Scarlett was no broken.

**15. Determine the type of the following predicative constructions. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. I heard Daisy singing on the stage. 2. They were seen acting together in the play. 3. My brother having lost the key, we couldn't enter the house. 4. We thought him lost in the underground maze. 5. The weather being fine, they went for a walk. 6. Jim was able to watch them building the new car park from his office window. 7. They got their car delivered to the airport. 8. While Tom was in Moscow he had his eyes tested. 9. The student knowing German well, the exam didn't last long. 10. The agricultural situation in the country is becoming worse, with agricultural surpluses in the USA rapidly increasing and exports declining.

**16. Rewrite the sentences using participles.**

1. She was sitting on the veranda and she was drinking her coffee. 2. Because she was exhausted. Ann went home. 3. After Flora had made breakfast. she called the children. 4. Mike cut his finger while he was chopping some wood. 5. Kelly had a shower before she went to bed. 6. The girl who is standing by the door is my sister. 7. Because they were late. they took a taxi. 8. She was lying on her bed and she was reading a book. 9. The jewels which were taken by the thieves were very valuable. 10. Alex picked up his pen and started to write the letter. 11. The woman who is walking towards us is a relative of mine. 12. After the teacher had explained the exercise, he asked the students

to do it. 13. Lisa opened the window and breathed the fresh air. 14. Because she had forgotten to take her purse. she had to borrow some money from a colleague.

**17. Underline the correct word.**

1. A: Did you see the exhibition of modern art yesterday?  
B: Yes. It was an *amazed* / *amazing* display.
2. A: Julia is always touching her hair.  
B: I know. It's an extremely *annoyed* / *annoying* habit.
3. A: Why doesn't James study Spanish?  
B: He is not *interesting* / *interested* in learning foreign languages.
4. A: Did you enjoy the comedy?  
B: No. It was very *amused* / *amusing*.
5. A: What did you think of that new caf??  
B: It was terrible! The food was *disgusting* / *disgusted*.
6. A: Do you like snorkeling?  
B: Yes. I find it very *exciting* / *excited*.
7. A: Miss Andrew is a wonderful teacher.  
B: Yes. She is always *encouraged* / *encouraging* in her attitude towards the children.
8. A: Linda is good at art, isn't she?  
B: Yes. I was *impressed* / *impressing* by her paintings.

**18. Translate the sentences into Russian. Rewrite the sentences using clauses instead of participial constructions.**

1. A person bringing bad news is never welcome.
2. While skiing yesterday Sarah fell and hurt herself.
3. Having lived in the town all his life, he knew it very well.
4. He showed the tourists into the room reserved for them.
5. Having finished his work, he went home.
6. The village seized by the enemy two weeks ago was retaken by our troops.
7. When writing a telegram people must use just a few words.
8. Having been seriously wounded, he was no longer fit or active service.
9. Jessica went to see Tom, being told of his arrival.
10. Books read in childhood seem like old friends.

**19. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Her task having been finished, Jane went to bed.
2. The performance being over, everyone went away. The weather being fine, all the windows were opened.
3. With the shipping trike in the USA still going on, arrivals of American cotton in Liverpool were rather small.
4. Everybody being out, I

went away. 5. Knowing nothing of the dangers the tourists continued their way. 6. George left the house seen by no one. 7. Having received the information required, the sellers sent their clients their offer. 8. He has already looked through the list of prices sent. 9. Payment for the goods sold was made in Glasgow. 10. The show being very popular, it was difficult to get tickets.

**20. Translate the following sentences into English using participles.**

1. Анна уже проверила все сочинения, написанные учениками ее класса. 2. Покажите мне список студентов, изучающих французский язык. 3. Имея такого хорошего друга, вы легко можете справиться с любыми проблемами. 4. Переходя дорогу, он встретил своего давнего знакомого. 5. Будучи очень усталой, она легла спать. 6. Играя в шахматы, вы должны быть очень внимательны. 7. Прожив несколько лет в Новой Зеландии, он хорошо знал традиции и обычаи этой страны. 8. Сдав все экзамены, он уехала к родителям. 9. Вернувшись из рабочей поездки, он сделал очень интересный доклад. 10. Железная дорога, соединяющая юг и север страны, была построена 30 лет назад. 11. Переводя текст, студенты пользовались словарем. 12. Директор фирмы показал нам список товаров, экспортируемых этой организацией.

## THE GERUND

---

**1. Form the Gerund Indefinite Active from the following verbs. Pay attention to the spelling rules.**

To read, to swim, to fish, to sing

**2. Determine the function of the gerund in the following sentences.**

1. Dancing is her favourite hobby. 2. After reading the book I put it into the bookcase. 3. He finished working in the garden two hours ago. 4. I'm fond of cooking. 5. I remember reading it. 6. Her greatest pleasure is making dolls. 7. I had the pleasure of reading your article in the local newspaper. 8. She went skiing last Saturday. 9. I don't mind helping you with the dishes. 10. Smoking is dangerous.

**3. Put the forms of Participle I from the list below into the correct column.**

Being interrupted, using, having taken, being treated, having been hit, trying, being invited, talking, nodding, having seen, receiving, having been shown, being questioned, having caught, having been noticed, having changed, having been reduced.

Indefinite Active	Indefinite Passive	Perfect Active	Perfect Passive

**4. Choose the correct form of the gerund.**

1. Would you mind *coming up / being come up* to the library with me?  
 2. He left without *saying / having said* a word. 3. He disapproved of Jane Brown *engaging / being engaged* as a manager. 4. The rooms need *cleaning / being cleaned*. 5. I remember *putting / having put* my watch on the table. 6. The play isn't worth *reading / being read*. 7. After *having waited / waiting* a minute or two I followed her. 8. His parents objected to his *going / being gone* to London to study painting. 9. Robert's novels deserve *praising / being praised*. 10. We insisted on his *taking / being taken* to hospital. 11. Our car needs *being serviced / servicing*. 12. I was afraid of *being lost / loosing* his confidence. 13. The party was still going on, but Tim avoided *seeing / being seen* by anyone. 14. We were looking forward to *seeing / having seen* them again.

**5. Choose the preposition which should be used before the gerund.**

1. There is a chance *of / for / to* catching the last bus. 2. The idea *of / for / to* his being involved in the robbery seemed incredible. 3. I agree *at / to / for* his taking part in the investigation. 4. All depends *on / for / to* their being involved in the case. 5. I insist *on / for / to* your mentioning these figures in your report. 6. She blamed herself *of / for / to* not having checked up. 7. She was punished *of / for / to* having believed Nick's story so easily. 8. Your help will consist *in / for / to* telling us what you saw that night. 9. They succeeded *of / for / in* opening a new branch of their company. 10. I heard *of / for / to* his coming back from Australia.

**6. Make up the sentences from the following words and word combinations. Ask questions and give short answers as in the example.**

*E.g.: Does Erica like jogging? Yes, she does. No, she doesn't.*

- 1) James, play basketball, like
- 2) James and Cathy, go to the cinema, enjoy
- 3) Rosy, watch rugby, be not keen on
- 4) Rick, stay in the hotel, not like
- 5) Nick, listen to jazz, hate
- 6) Roger, work in Melbourne, love
- 7) Kitty, play the violin, enjoy

**7. Use the gerund of the verb in brackets in the Active or Passive Voice.**

1. She tried to avoid (to see).
2. The problem is not worth (to speak of).
3. We suspected him (to be) unfair.
4. She didn't like (to remind) people of their mistakes or (to remind) of his.
5. Why does he avoid (to see) me?
6. Chris can't get used to (to treat) like that.
7. They insisted on (to send) her to the summer camp at once.
8. The equipment must go through several tests before (to install).
9. He was annoyed at (to interrupt) every other moment.
10. They showed no sign of (to impress).

**8. Complete each sentence with one of these verbs using the gerund.**

*answer go listen watch be clean talk apply make live*

1. James gave up \_\_\_\_\_ to find a job in the town and decided to go to London.
2. Could you please stop \_\_\_\_\_ so much noise?
3. Tim avoided \_\_\_\_\_ Sarah's questions.
4. Has he ever considered \_\_\_\_\_ to live in another country?
5. I've just finished \_\_\_\_\_ the flat.
6. Suddenly everyone stopped \_\_\_\_\_. There was silence.
7. They can't carry on \_\_\_\_\_ like this!
8. I don't fancy \_\_\_\_\_ this film tonight.
9. If you cross the road without looking, you risk \_\_\_\_\_ knocked down.
10. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ to folk music.

**9. Complete the sentences so that they mean the same as the first sentence. Use the gerund.**

1. Could you turn the TV up, please?  
Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_?
2. It's not a good idea to go abroad this summer.  
It's better to avoid \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The student said that it was true that he hadn't done his homework.  
The student admitted \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Please don't keep us waiting so long.  
Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Shall we leave for Moscow next Friday instead of tomorrow?  
Shall we postpone \_\_\_\_\_ until \_\_\_\_\_?
6. She can do what she wants and you can't stop her.  
You can't stop her \_\_\_\_\_.
7. He tried not to answer Jenny's question.  
He avoided \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I didn't want to say that.  
I regret \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Paula doesn't smoke.  
Paula gave up \_\_\_\_\_ two months ago.
10. They insisted that we should have dinner with them.  
They insisted on \_\_\_\_\_.

**10. Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences. Use the gerund.**

*E.g.: She wanted to have a rest. She suggested going home.*

1. I'm afraid there isn't any chalk. I hope you don't mind \_\_\_\_\_.
2. George is such a strange person. I can't imagine \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The weather was fine, so George suggested \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The joke was very funny. We couldn't stop \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Lily isn't feeling very well. She doesn't fancy \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Sally is a very interesting person. We always enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
7. She denies \_\_\_\_\_. She admits only \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The wind is so strong! Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_?

**11. Complete the sentences. Use either the infinitive form or the -ing form (or both, if possible).**

1. I couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I'm tired of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. James left the room without \_\_\_\_\_.
4. She had no intention of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I couldn't prevent her from \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I like \_\_\_\_\_.
7. She is afraid \_\_\_\_\_.
8. He's very fond of \_\_\_\_\_.
9. They are proud of \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I begin my working day by \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I had my lunch before \_\_\_\_\_.
12. As the students were listening attentively, the teacher continued \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Bob was accused of \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Thank you for \_\_\_\_\_.
15. We can't afford \_\_\_\_\_.
16. He went to the disco instead of \_\_\_\_\_.
17. He stopped \_\_\_\_\_.
18. Remember \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Have you finished \_\_\_\_\_?
20. Being a

doctor means \_\_\_\_\_. 21. You should try \_\_\_\_\_. 22. She went on \_\_\_\_\_. 23. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_. 24. She remembers \_\_\_\_\_. 25. They began \_\_\_\_\_.

### 12. Choose the -ing form or the infinitive.

1. Is that new magazine worth to *read / reading*? 2. Although Alice was in a hurry, she stopped to *talk / talking* to him. 3. Why have you stopped to *read / reading*? 4. You must stop to *smoke / smoking*. 5. Would you mind to *open / opening* the window? 6. You should remember to *phone / phoning* her. At that time she'll be at work. 7. Does he enjoy to *teach / teaching*? 8. All parts of London seem to *belong / belonging* to different epochs. 9. The teacher asked his students some questions and went on to *tell / telling* them about the geographical position of the USA. 10. When the family had finished to *eat / eating*, the waitress brought the bill. 11. Her elder sister went to college, and she hoped to *go / going* there too. 12. We'll always remember to *meet / meeting* you for the first time. 13. The Priestleys want to *leave / leaving* for Houston next week. 14. Carol is so nervous. She can't help to *think / thinking* about that awful car accident. 15. Her car needs a service, and Tim offered to help / helping her with it. 16. Avoid to *overeat / overeating* and you'll feel better soon.

### 13. Use the correct form of the gerund and determine its function in each sentence.

1. Excuse me for (to give) you so much trouble.
2. Soon she couldn't help (to notice) that she was being looked at.
3. The child was afraid of (to punish) and ran away.
4. I like to do things without (to disturb) anyone or (to disturb).
5. Jerry reproached me for not (to keep) my promise.
6. Lisa can't go there without (to invite).
7. Stop (to talk) during the lesson!
8. We were surprised at (to hear) the news.
9. I can't get used (to treat) like that.
10. Go on (to read), please.
11. (to skydive) is my favourite sport.
12. What I love best in the world is (to go) to the theatre.

### 14. Complete the sentences using the gerund as a subject. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. (To smoke) is bad for you. 2. It's no use (to talk) about it. 3. Is it any good (to do) it? 4. (To skate) is pleasant. 5. It isn't worth while (to go) there.

6. (To listen) to music is his favourite hobby. 7. (To steal) money is a crime. 8. The student's (to know) English well helped him considerably in learning German. 9. Her (to try) to help pleased him a lot. 10. (To lose) a game of draughts is always unpleasant

**15. Complete the sentences using the gerund as a predicative. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Her greatest pleasure was (to travel). 2. It looks like (to rain). 3. Jane didn't feel like (to go) out that evening. 4. To be among those books was like (to find) fresh water in a desert. 5. Kate's role is (to show) people in and out. 6. Watching Roger's video looked to her like (to feel) his presence. 7. Her only duty was (keep) the house clean. 8. Her greatest wish was (to take up) volleyball. 9. His main concern is (to help) old people. 10. Kate's hobby is (to write) short stories.

**16. Use your own ideas to complete the sentences with the gerund as part of a verbal compound predicate.**

1. Has it stopped...? 2. I must go on.... 3. The guide.... 4. The girl kept on.... 5. When will they finish...? 6. We could not help.... 7. She began.... 8. I intend.... 9. She didn't want to go to the cinema. She suggested.... 10. We didn't mind....

**17. Use your own ideas to complete the sentences with the gerund as an object.**

1. Don't put off .... 2. You should avoid .... 3. She never mentioned .... 4. She doesn't seem to have attempted .... 5. Just imagine .... 6. We don't insist on .... 7. Why do you persist in ...? 8. Do you object to ...? 9. Did he succeed in ...? 10. Are you responsible for ...?

**18. Complete the sentences using the gerund as an attribute. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. There are different ways of (to solve) this problem. 2. During the webinar we discussed different methods (to teach) foreign languages. 3. Did he have any reason for (to say) such a thing. 4. They have no intention of (to order) such machinery. 5. We were surprised at (to hear) about his arrival. 6. There is no necessity of (to leave) at once. 7. It's a good way of (to lose) weigh. 8. There is still a hope of (to win) the competition. 9. She has a good experience in (to write) scientific articles. 10. He had a feeling of (to deceive).

**19. Rewrite any sentences in which you can substitute before ... ing or after ... ing.**

*E.g.: After I left school, I went to college. – After leaving school, I went to college.*

1. Before Betsy went out, she had a shower.
2. Before he went to bed, he had a glass of milk.
3. Before Michaela took the job, her mother was very worried about her.
4. After they left, the telephone rang.
5. Before he became a painter, Van Gogh was a teacher.
6. After living in Paris, he moved to Arles.
7. After he spent a year in a mental hospital, he shot himself.
8. After he arrived in New York, he made friends with Alexander.

**20. Use your own ideas to complete the sentences with the gerund as an adverbial modifier.**

1. In ... she missed a line. 2. Take your time before.... 3. Our outlook has broadened after.... 4. He took far too much on himself by.... 5. On ... she ran to the door. 6. After... I made up my mind to go there. 7. The story was changed for.... 8. He was in hospital for .... 9. In spite of ... she didn't turn up there. 10. We spent the whole evening in .... 11. I can't go there without.... 12. He answered me by .... 13. Excuse me for ... 14. She improved the novel by .... 15. You'll never speak good English without....

**21. Determine if the gerund or the participle is used in the following sentences.**

1. The dancing girl is very pretty. 2. His hobby is taking photos. 3. The research revealed a shocking truth. 4. I love her singing. 5. He might get into trouble for faking an illness to avoid school. 6. Our dog's favourite activity is playing with our cat Marquis. 7. Having worked in a hospital for several years, she knew the seriousness of the wound. 8. Smiling Meggie kissed the baby. 9. The man wearing the black jacket is my cousin. 10. We saw him walking on the bank of the river.

**22. Determine if the gerund or the verbal noun is used in the following sentences.**

1. I was awakened by their loud talking. 2. George took part in the sittings of the committee. 3. The buyers examined the goods before concluding the contract. 4. They started loading the ship. 5. I was counting on your being present. 6. They started the discharging of the truck. 7. She

was afraid of the child's sudden coughing. 8. The third killing was more gruesome than the first two. 9. I understood the message after several readings. 10. She loves singing, but she doesn't have a good voice.

### **23. Translate the following sentences into English using the gerund.**

1. Не стоит звонить ей. В это время ее никогда не бывает дома. 2. Сон на свежем воздухе очень полезен. 3. Я не возражаю, чтобы она приехала сюда. 4. Я помню, что брат говорил мне об этом несколько дней назад. 5. Майкл был очень разочарован тем, что лучший друг отказался ему помочь. 6. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы вы им ответили немедленно. 7. Извини, что не позвонила вчера. 8. Мы слышали о том, что его посылают на север. 9. Могу ли я рассчитывать на то, что он даст нам точную информацию. 10. Ты не возражаешь, чтобы я прочел этот рассказ вслух. 11. Я благодарен Вам за то, что Вы так быстро ответили на мое письмо. 12. Я помню, что встречал его где-то. 13. Бесполезно идти туда сейчас. 14. Эту комедию стоит посмотреть. 15. После того, как она месяц провела в Крыму, она уехала домой. 16. Удалось ли вам найти ее адрес? 17. Он имеет плохую привычку курить перед завтраком. 18. Мне нужно закончить работу, прежде чем идти домой. 19. У нас нет надежды увидеть его скоро. 20. Келли вспомнила, что встречалась с Джоном на книжной ярмарке. 21. Они признались, что неверно информировали нас. 22. Странно, почему он избегает говорить н эту тему? 23. Я очень обрадовалась перспективе поработать с таким известным автором. 24. Снег пошел как раз тогда, когда мы выходили из театра. 25. Опыт вождения машины пригодится тебе в будущем.

## THE INFINITIVE

---

### **1. Determine the function of the infinitive in the following sentences.**

1. He began to play football at the age of 8. 2. To ride a horse is pleasant. 3. Your duty is to inform me about any accident immediately. 4. They expressed a desire to help her. 5. We didn't ask you to come. 6. We went to the station to see off our friend. 7. I told her to read the book. It' very interesting. 8. I asked her to speak slowly. 9. Would you like to come with us? 10. To be, or not to be, that is the question.

**2. Put the forms of the infinitive from the list below into the correct column.**

To be asking, to be done, to tell, to have lived, to have been drawing, to be said, to have been checked, to have been awaiting, to have done, to be noticed, to skate, to have been seen, to have forgotten, to have been going, to be improving, to arrive, to have been appointed, to be writing, to have been travelling, to read, to be boiling, to have been left, to be noticed, to have returned.

Indefinite Active	Indefinite Passive	Continuous Active	Perfect Active	Perfect Passive	Perfect Continuous Active

**3. Insert 'to' where necessary.**

1. I think she ought ... apologize. 2. Make her ... keep her voice down. 3. Help her ... carry the luggage. 4. Our daughter asked us ... let her ... go abroad. 5. We must ... go to the seaside. 6. Mary asked me ... read the message carefully and ... write an answer. 7. The woman told us not ... sit on the grass. 8. You had better ... have a snack. 9. Let us ... help you ... solve the problem. 10. She was heard ... leave the country. 10. They came ... ask whether there was anything they could ... do for us. 11. He said that Laura might ... come in the afternoon. 12. The famous singer was made ... repeat the song. 13. He is said ... learn foreign languages quickly. 14. Please let me ... go by myself. 15. Why not ... take a holiday for a few days? 16. Let him ... call you. 17. He used ... take a bus to the university but now he'd rather ... walk. 18. We didn't see you ... come in. 19. Ted made me ... play tag with him. 20. Could you ... help us?

**4. Determine the functions of the infinitive in the sentences.**

1. To sleep in the open air is healthy. 2. Jenny's duty is to answer all the telephone calls. 3. The captain was last to leave the ship. 4. I asked my husband to go there with me. 5. To do it meant to break the promise. 6. They went there early enough to get good tickets. 7. I have never heard him sing. 8. I don't want to go there alone. 9. The suitcase is very heavy to be lifted. 10. Jane was too busy to see anyone. 11. To tell the truth, I'm not interested in this case. 12. He drove fast enough to win the race.

**5. Translate the sentences with the Objective Infinitive Construction.**

1. My parents want me to learn Spanish. 2. I expect him to be on time. 3. He'd like us to read this article. 4. She doesn't allow us to smoke in the flat.

5. I saw her cross the road. 6. Tell me what you would like me to do. 7. Did you feel the bridge shake? 8. Put on the coat, I don't want you to catch cold. 8. We expected him to arrive on Monday. And he's already here. 9. Further research proved the assumption to be wrong. 10. The customs officer made Molly open her bag. 11. I wouldn't recommend anybody to stay in that hotel. 12. I was warned to touch the switch.

### **6. Paraphrase the sentences using the Objective Infinitive Construction.**

*E.g: I expect that they will come back on Sunday. – I expect them to come back on Sunday.*

1. I know that he is a very experienced teacher. 2. I consider that I'm right. 3. We expect that the contract will be concluded in the near future. 4. I expect that I will be invited there. 5. He didn't expect that he would be asked about it. 6. They didn't expect that they would be sent there. 7. We know that they are experienced enough to do this work. 8. I consider that he is right.

### **7. Translate the sentences into English using the Objective Infinitive Construction.**

1. Она хочет, чтобы мы пришли к ней сегодня. 2. Она не любит, когда ее прерывают. 3. Никогда не слышала, как он говорит по-испански. 4. Мы не слышали, Тим постучал в дверь. 5. Никто не заметил, что она вышла из комнаты. 6. Я почувствовал, как кто-то дотронулся до моей руки. 7. Он приказал открыть окно. 8. Капитан разрешил нам грузить товары. 8. Она попросила принести ей чашечку кофе. 9. Покупатели просили продавцов снизить цену. 10. Мы видели, как она вошла в комнату, включила свет и села за стол.

### **8. Translate the sentences with the Subjunctive Infinitive Construction into Russian.**

1. The river Thames is known to divide London into two parts. 2. She is said to have been learning German for three years. 3. Nadia seems to know English well. 4. They are certain to visit all the parks in the city. 5. Mike and Daisy are sure to return soon. 6. I happened to be there. 7. She is said to have received the message. 8. January and February are known to be the coldest months in Russia. 9. Lots of tourists are supposed to arrive in this ancient city. 10. Surfing is considered to be one of the most popular sports in Australia.

**9. Paraphrase the sentences using the Subjunctive Infinitive Construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

*A.E.g.: It is known that million tons of coal reserves exist in that district. – Million tons of coal reserves are known to exist in that district.*

1. It was expected that the members of the parliament would come to an agreement. 2. It is known that he is a theatregoer. 3. It was reported that many buildings had been destroyed by the fire. 4. It is expected that a great number of people will attend the conference. 5. It is considered that this mine is the best in the country. 6. It is said that the expedition has reached the Northern Pole. 7. It was reported that the cargo had arrived in Vladivostok. 8. It is reported that the delegation has left the city. 9. It is said that he knows several oriental languages. 10. It is said that he is writing a new book. 11. It was known that the steamer had left the port on the 20th April. 12. It was said that he had been travelling about the country a good deal.

*B.E.g.: It seems that he knows English well. – He seems to know English well.*

1. It appears that the weather is improving. 2. It proved that he was a good worker. 3. It seems that this cartoon is very popular with the children. 4. It happened that Mary was at home that time. 5. It seems that the performance has made a great impression on her. 6. It proved that he was a very experienced engineer. 7. It appears that the house was built in the 19th century. 8. It seemed that James knew the subject well. 9. It happened that he was there. 10. It appeared that she knew the truth.

*C. E.g.: It is likely that she will come tonight. – She is likely to come tonight.*

1. It is likely that they will come soon. 2. It is unlikely that the goods will arrive at the end of the week. 3. It is certain that they will come to St. Petersburg. 4. It is sure that he will return soon. 5. It is very likely that her article will be published in the newspaper. 6. It is certain that they will be here on Wednesday. 7. It is unlikely that the meeting will be postponed.

**10. Translate the sentences into English using the Subjunctive Infinitive Construction.**

1. Говорят, что она в Кардиффе. 2. Ожидают, что договор будет подписан в конце года. 3. Известно, что они придерживаются другого мнения. 3. Говорят, что здание этого музея было построено около трехсот лет назад. 4. Считают, что он одна из лучших балерин нашей страны. 5. Она, по-видимому, не удовлетворена результатами вашей работы. 6. Она

оказалась верной подругой. 7. Я случайно встретила его в Крыму. 8. Этот роман, по-видимому, очень интересный. 9. Погода, вероятно, ухудшится. 10. Она, наверное, согласится принять участие в этом исследовании. 11. Джейн вряд ли придет. 12. Очень вероятно, что эту проблему обсудят на собрании сегодня. 13. Анна, наверное, придет вовремя. 14. Ему, наверняка, понравится на вечеринке.

### 11. Complete the sentences by adding 'for'-phrases to them.

*E.g.: There is no need (you; to stay at home). – There is no need for you to stay at home.*

1. It was necessary (the steamer; to call at Novorossiysk). 2. There is no reason (he; to return immediately). 3. There is no need (we; to change the terms of payment). 4. It is too late (you; to go there). 5. There was no time (they; to examine the goods that day). 6. It is easy (you; to say that). 7. This is (she; to decide). 8. The water was too cold (the children; to bathe). 9. The first thing (I; to do) is to find out when the cargo arrives. 10. Laura waited (he; to react). 11. The best thing (we; to do) is to leave immediately. 12. It is very bad (girls; to smoke). 13. It won't be easy (I; to pretend).

### 12. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. It was impossible for her to make decision without her husband's approval. 2. For Ann to spend the summer in the mountains was an exciting experience. 3. It was natural for her to read a lot. 4. Everyone was impatient for the film to start. 5. This is not for us to decide. 6. In this magazine there are some puzzles for you to develop your skills. 7. Rosy e-mailed them to know the results of the olympiad. 8. She ordered pizza and mint mojito for us to have something to eat and drink. 9. The storm was too short for the ferry to damage. 10. The mistake was not evident enough for everybody to notice it.

### 13. Translate the sentences into English using the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

1. Ей необходимо быть здесь завтра в 10 часов утра. 2. Тому легко это сделать. 3. Твоему брату необходимо повидать ее. 4. Марине трудно сделать эту работу в такой короткий срок. 5. Статья была слишком трудной, чтобы Диана могла перевести ее без словаря. 6. Сейчас слишком поздно, чтобы дети шли гулять. 7. Ему важно было решить эту проблему как можно быстрее. 8. Тебе будет полезно съездить на море и отдохнуть. 9. Ей было необходимо отвлечься от работы. 10. Детям вредно

есть фастфуд. 11. Им легче сделать это сегодня. 12. Все ожидали, что эта новость появиться в СМИ.

#### 14. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. John was sorry not to have followed Betty's advice. 2. Terry was glad to have met him. 3. I was sorry to have heard that. 4. It is clever to have admitted that offer. 5. They were sorry to have sent her the wrong size.

#### 15. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Она была рада, что последовала совету Джеймса. 2. Мне было жаль, что я это увидела. 3. Я рада, что достала билет на концерт. 4. Эндрю был рад, что увидел ее. 5. Он сожалел, что не рассказал об этом Тине.

#### 16. Fill in the correct form of the infinitive.

*E.g.: The weather seems (improve) .... Let's go out. – The weather seems to have improved. Let's go out.*

1. He appears (work) ... on his composition for hours. 2. Mike has decided (accept) ... Jim's offer. 3. I'm hoping (leave) ... by then so I won't be able to come with you. 4. This rug is filthy. It really needs (clean) ... soon. 5. The waste from the power station is said (pollute) ... the atmosphere for several years. 6. It will be much too cold (wear)... a T-shirt. 8. You must have been hungry (eat) ... all those sandwiches. 9. He appears (injure) ... as a result of the fight. 10. You are expected (pay) ... the whole amount today. 11. The meeting was supposed (start) ... an hour later. 2. It was very warm earlier on today but it seems (get cold) ... now. 13. He claims (discover) ... a cure for the serious disease. 14. Can I trust you (keep) ... your word? 15. She doesn't seem (work) ... too hard these days, does she?

#### 17. Choose the correct form or the infinitive.

1. I may run across her in Moscow. Would you like me *let / to let* you know about her? 2. If she is in real want I'm ready *help / to help* her. 3. Few people will be *found / found* to deny her greatness. 4. The tourists asked to *take / to be taken* round the palace. 5. They seemed to be *packing / to have been packing* in a hurry. A lot of things were left behind. 6. It was unpleasant to *question / to be questioned* by the police. 7. It was foolish of Roger not to *follow / to be followed* my advice. 8. George was said to be / to have been once a good specialist in this field. 9. I don't like to treat / to be treated like a child. 10. They are sure to *make / to have made* friends very soon. 11. Christy and Donna seem to be / to be being on friendly terms.

12. He happened *to see / to have seen* her just before his departure.  
 13. Angie was disappointed *to find / to have found* that the ring had disappeared.  
 14. In the beginning, I'd like *to get / to be getting* all the facts on the table.  
 15. When Father came into the room she pretended *to sleep / to be sleeping*.  
 16. There was no need for he *to come forward / for him to come forward* with his help.  
 17. She would never get Jerry *to believe / believe* you.  
 18. I'll have Terry *to write / write* a letter to him.  
 19. There is nothing more *to be examined / to have been examined*.  
 20. We saw her face *change / have changed*.

## THE ADVERB

---

### 1. Put the adverbs from the list below into the correct column.

Quickly, always, somehow, daily, then, happily, shortly, perhaps, almost, still, soon, a little, anywhere, at last, fairly, now, of course, sometimes, likewise, often, occasionally, no longer, nearly, fortunately, very much, a bit, enough, totally, anyhow, eagerly, here, badly, nowhere, on foot, everywhere, well, angrily, seriously, a lot, luckily, no longer, truly, there, frantically, nearby, soon, in vain, elsewhere.

Simple	Derivative	Compound	Composite

### 2. Form adverbs from the following adjectives.

Wide, possible, busy, dangerous, simple, sad, terrible, happy, heavy, delicate, free, wonderful, rare, rude, fantastic, easy, careless, slow, strong, quiet, perfect, nice.

### 3. Put the words from the list below into the correct column.

Well, easily, bad, early, angrily, noisy, quick, happily, quietly, careful, daily, monthly, tidy, large, carelessly, late, slowly, hard.

Adjectives	Adverbs	Adjectives & Adverbs

**4. Fill in the blanks with the correct comparative and superlative forms.**

*E.g.: early – earlier – the earliest*

carefully	fast
noisily	politely
loudly	clearly
fluently	hard
often	late

**5. Fill in the gaps with the correct adverb form (comparative or superlative) of the adjectives in brackets.**

1. Jane speaks German ... (fluent) now than two years ago. 2. Bob greeted Daisy ... (polite) of all. 3. I can't hear you. Could you speak a little ... (loud) please. 4. The new library is far ... (close) to my house than the old one. 5. Tina's new hairdo makes her look much ... (attractive). 6. They could get to the village far ... (late). 7. Alice could cope with the task much ... (good). 8. Cora reads ... (slow) than Eric. 9. The child smiled ... (happy) than before. 10. She worked ... (hard) than ever before. 11. Their football team played ... (bad) of all.

**6. Rewrite the sentences in the correct order.**

*E.g.: she went/by bicycle/ to school/in the morning – She went to school by bicycle in the morning.*

- 1) always/he/drinks tea/at breakfast
- 2) never/Jack/by bus/goes to work
- 3) Jim/worked hard/yesterday/at school
- 4) Jane/often/forgets/her ID
- 5) someone/at the door/quietly/knocked/at midnight
- 6) foxes/rarely/see/you/in these woods
- 7) abroad/he/often/on business/goes
- 8) in the queue/she/for an hour/waited/patiently

**7. Underline the correct item.**

1. I live very *near* / *nearly* to the cinema. 2. Pat was *late* / *lately* for work almost every day last week. 3. The tourists can move around *free* / *freely*. 4. She hasn't been feeling very well *late* / *lately*. 5. Judith's story sounded *high* / *highly* unlikely. 6. Mr. Smith *near* / *nearly* crashed his car last week. 7. The music was so loud that we could *hard* / *hardly* hear what she

was saying. 8. They got those markers *free / freely* with a whiteboard. 9. They could see the sparrows' nest *high / highly* up in the tree. 10. We tried *hard / hardly* to solve the problem, but we didn't manage to do it.

**8. Rewrite each sentence beginning with the words given.**

*E.g.: Vicky is a very quick learner. – Vicky learns very quickly.*

1. Ricky is a good cook. – Ricky can cook really ....
2. His behavior was extremely foolish. – He behaved ....
3. I don't think that's a practical suggestion. – That suggestion doesn't sound ....
4. We wish you were a fast runner. – We wish you could ....
5. Has the child been good today? – Has the child behaved ...?
6. Jessica is usually a hard worker. – Jessica usually works ...
7. My grandpa is a slow walker. – My grandpa walks ...
8. This is a daily newspaper. – This newspaper comes out ...
9. She always gives a straight answer. – She always answers ...
10. Our father is an excellent speaker. – Our father speaks ...

**9. Put the adverbs or adverbial phrases of manner in the correct place.**

1. Mr. Osborn beat his slave in order to teach him a good lesson. (severely)
2. The boy refused to speak to anyone. (rudely)
3. They bore their troubles. (with fortitude)
4. He answered the question. (with difficulty)
5. Cora told them to mind their own business. (quietly)
6. We laughed at the joke. (heartily)
7. The horses stirred in their stalls. (uneasily)
8. He came into the bedroom. (quickly)
9. She answered their questions. (impatiently)
10. We are indebted to you for your help. (deeply)

**10. Put the adverbs or adverbial phrases of time, repetition and frequency in the correct place.**

1. The strange noise ceased. (soon)
2. We must finish or we'll miss our plane. (at once)
3. Have you finished your composition? (yet)
4. She is late. (never)
5. I have heard of it. (often)
6. She writes to them (often), but they answer his letters (seldom).
7. It has been said. (before, often)
8. She used to go there every year. (always)
9. She gets letters from them. (sometimes)
10. He is in time. (always)
11. The old woman remained deep in contemplation. (for a long time)
12. She told Dick to go. (at once)

**11. Find the best suitable place for adverbs and adverbial phrases in the sentences.**

1. The librarian wants us to return the books (before Friday; to the library).  
 2. We'll meet (at 2 p.m.; in front of the theatre; on Saturday). 3. Please come (the day after tomorrow; punctually; to the embankment). 4. His friend Jason has coffee (usually; at a caf?; in the morning). 5. The children study (at night; hardly ever; carefully). 6. Our aunt works (at home; in the evening; regularly). 7. We go (to the mountains; often; in winter). 8. Mary and John played (all day long; there; quietly). 9. They visited the Hermitage (a month ago; regularly). 10. My sister was born (at 2 a.m.; in 2009; on August 10th).

**12. Choose the right item.**

1. The explanation was quite *simple / simply*. 2. The problem can be solved quite *simple / simply*. 3. Mary didn't sleep very *good / well* last night. 4. It's not *good / well* for you to lie. 5. She was *angry / angrily* at what they said. 6. She looked at us *angry / angrily*. 7. The soldiers fought very *brave / bravely*. 8. They are *brave / bravely* men. 9. The song isn't *bad / badly*. 10. She sang the song *bad / badly*. 11. The answer was quite *clear / clearly*. 12. His behavior *clear / clearly* shows the difference between them. 13. They received him *cold / coldly*. 14. The weather is *cold / coldly* today. 15. They travelled *comfortable / comfortably*. 16. There are six *comfortable / comfortably* chairs in the dining room. 17. She is *dangerous / dangerously* ill. 18. The fire is *dangerous / dangerously*. 19. His description is not quite *exact / exactly*. 20. I don't know *exact / exactly*, when he'll come. 21. They looked round *helpless / helplessly*. 22. He is quite *helpless / helplessly*. 23. The work was *perfect / perfectly* done. 24. The weather during the last few days has been *perfect / perfectly*. 25. The answer is not *satisfactory / satisfactorily*. 26. She is working *satisfactory / satisfactorily*.

**13. Translate into English.**

1. Я видела его где-то. 2. Я никуда не хочу уезжать на следующей неделе. 3. Ты должен идти немедленно, а то опоздаешь на встречу. 4. Куда вы пойдете сегодня вечером? – Думаю, никуда. 5. Покупатели уже приехали? 6. Как, вы уже вернулись? 7. Кети заходила к нам в пятницу, и с тех пор мы ее не видели. 8. У нас достаточно времени, чтобы успеть на рейс. 9. В саду почти нет цветов. 10. Она достаточно умна, чтобы понять это. 11. В чернильнице почти нет чернил. 12. Джеймс был очень разочарован, увидев, что ее там нет. 13. Ты тоже читал эту

пьесу? 14. У них уже была генеральная репетиция спектакля? 15. Кто еще будет принимать участие в этом проекте? 16. Теперь я с ней никогда не встречаюсь. 17. Мы тоже поедem на озеро летом. 18. Она всегда приходит сюда в восемь часов вечера. 19. Он чувствовал себя плохо, поэтому пошел прямо домой. 20. Вы всегда можете получить эти справочники в нашей городской библиотеке. 21. Она знает французский, немецкий и английский языки, но лучше всего говорит по-французски. 22. Крестьяне больше всего работают летом и осенью. 23. Ник бежал быстрее всех. 24. Моя подруга говорит по-французски лучше меня. 25. Он приходит в институт позже нас. 26. Вы выполнили работу тщательнее, чем Нина. 27. Она навещает нас чаще, чем ты. 28. Ребенок еще спит. 29. Я совсем забыла про встречу. 30. Вы когда-нибудь с кем-нибудь еще говорили об этом?

## THE MODAL WORDS

---

### 1. Put the modal words from the list below into the correct column.

Surely, maybe, of course, certainly, probably, no doubt, perhaps, actually, indeed, truly, evidently, fortunately, luckily, apparently, by all means, definitely, obviously, assuredly, naturally, really, decidedly.

Certainty	Supposition	Desirability / Undesirability

### 2. Point out all the modal words and define their meaning. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Of course, no one could deny that Dorothy Townsend had a pleasant voice. (W.S. Maugham) 2. Robbery had evidently not been the motive, since a well-filled wallet was found in his pocket. (E.S. Gardner) 3. It can't possibly be Walter. He doesn't leave the laboratory till five. (W.S. Maugham) 4. I put it to you that you haven't been bothering much about your husband lately. Perhaps he isn't quite so much in love with you as he was. (W.S. Maugham) 5. Surely if anything had occurred, we should have been informed.

(W.S. Maugham) 6. My dear fellow, how can you possibly be so sure of that? (A.C. Doyle) 7. "Interesting, though elementary," said he as he returned to his favourite corner of the settee. "There are certainly one or two indications upon the stick. It gives us the basis for several deductions." (A.C. Doyle) 8. My dear, you flatter me. I certainly HAVE had my share of beauty, but I do not pretend to be anything extraordinary now. When a woman has five grown-up daughters, she ought to give over thinking of her own beauty. (J. Austen) 9. I honour your circumspection. A fortnight's acquaintance is certainly very little. One cannot know what a man really is by the end of a fortnight. (J. Austen) 10. "Boh! Madam Mope!" cried the voice of John Reed; then he paused: he found the room apparently empty. (Bronte Ch.) 11. "But as you are rich, Jane, you have now, no doubt, friends who will look after you, and not suffer you to devote yourself to a blind lameter<sup>1</sup> like me?" (Bronte Ch.) 12. "But his brain? That is probably rather soft? He means well: but you shrug your shoulders to hear him talk?" (Bronte Ch.) 13. The boy who takes this note could no doubt forward your telegram. (A.C. Doyle) 14. The bullet had passed through the front of her brain, and it would probably be some time before she could regain consciousness. (A.C. Doyle)

### 3. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Естественно, я хотела, чтобы он ответил на мой вопрос. 2. Ты, несомненно, скажешь мне правду. 3. Очевидно, ты это не читал. 4. К счастью, им удалось избежать опасности. 5. Оглядываясь назад, я понимаю, что она, вероятно, была права. 6. Очевидно, он был человек состоятельный. 7. Это, безусловно, одна из крупнейших задач, стоящих перед нами. 8. Борьба с бедностью и неравенством является, несомненно, самой большой проблемой для Гаити. 9. Разумеется, можно решить этот вопрос. 10. К счастью, я только начал.

## THE INTERJECTION

---

### 1. Put the interjections from the list below into the correct column.

Alas, oh, well, ouch, hush, ah, eh, hey, hmm, uh, uh-huh, gee whiz, whew, ugh, pooh, bravo, now, sh-sh, come, heigh-ho, why, dear me, tush.

Emotional	Imperative

**2. Put the interjections from the list below into the correct column**

Alas, oh, well, ouch, hush, ah, eh, hey, hmm, uh, uh-huh, gee whiz, whew, ugh, pooh, bravo, now, sh-sh, come, heigh-ho, why, dear me, tush, hurrah, fie, gee-ho, holla-ho, there, confound it, hey-ho, hang it, here.

Primary Interjections		Secondary Interjections	
Simple	Composite	Simple	Composite

**3. Fill the blanks with one of the interjections given below. Some of them may be used more than once.**

Hello! Hush! Eh! Uh-huh! Oh! Hurray! Um  
 Ah! Er! Hey! Alas! Ouch! Uh! Hmm!

- \_\_\_\_\_ What are you doing there?
- \_\_\_\_\_ He is dead.
- \_\_\_\_\_ We have won the game.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Have they gone?
- \_\_\_\_\_ I got such a fright.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Don't make noise.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you've stepped on my toes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I've got a toothache.
- What do you think of that, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Reykjavik is the capital of, \_\_\_\_\_, Iceland.
- \_\_\_\_\_ that seems nice.
- "It's cold today." " \_\_\_\_\_?" "I said it's cold today."
- \_\_\_\_\_ What a great idea!
- \_\_\_\_\_ please say 'yes'!
- \_\_\_\_\_ look at that!
- \_\_\_\_\_ I don't think that's a good idea.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Kitty is here!
- \_\_\_\_\_ I don't know the answer to that.
- Shall we go? \_\_\_\_\_
- 77 divided by 7 is \_\_\_ 11.

**4. Point out all the interjections and say whether they are emotional or imperative. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. "The Duchess! The Duchess! Oh my dear paws! Oh my fur and whiskers! She'll get me executed, as sure as ferrets are ferrets! Where can I have dropped them, I wonder?" Alice guessed in a moment that it was looking for the fan and the pair of white kid gloves... (L. Carroll) 2. "Well, I'd hardly finished the first verse," said the Hatter, "when the Queen jumped up and bawled out, "He's murdering the time! Off with his head!" (L. Carroll) 3. Good! We can proceed. This next little fact – no! Ah, that is curious! There is something missing – a link in the chain that is not there. (A. Christie) 4. Now, shall we start? (A. Christie) 5. But what do you think of yourself spreading reports about me like that, and then crawling to me for help the moment you are in trouble? What sort of a game is that – eh? (A.C. Doyle) 6. Who is this person? What does he want? Dear me, Staples, how often have I said that I am not to be disturbed in my hours of study? (A.C. Doyle) 7. "Good Heavens!" cried my mother, "you'll drive me mad!" (Dickens) 8. "Who is that?" she cried. "Hush, hush!" said one of the women, stooping over her... (Dickens) 9. "Good Lord!" said Fleur. "Am I only twenty-one? I feel forty-eight." (Galsworthy) 10. Hark! do you not hear? (Gerome K. Gerome) 11. "Let me see!" said Holmes. "Hum! Born in New Jersey in the year 1858. Contralto – hum! La Scala, hum! Prima donna Imperial Opera of Warsaw – yes! Retired from operatic stage – ha! Living in London – quite so! Your Majesty, as I understand, became entangled with this young person, wrote her some compromising letters, and is now desirous of getting those letters back." (A.C. Doyle)

**5. Translate the following sentences into Russian.**

1. Чу, кто там идет? 2. О, хорошо, что ты здесь. 3. Господи, за кого вы меня принимаете? 4. Черт возьми! А где француз? 5. У тебя стальные нервы. Bravo! 6. Увы, смелость не является чертой его характера. 7. Фу, как не стыдно! 8. Ах, Я просто искал свои часы. 9. Ура! Мы победили! 10. Эй, ты! Стой! 11. Ой, похоже, он слышал тебя. 12. Упс, я уже удалила все сообщения. 13. Но, эй, как же я? 14. Боже, я всегда мечтала об этом. 15. Господи, я сто лет его не видел. 16. Отец Браун, хвала небесам, Вы здесь. 17. Ох, не верится, что нам надо идти. 18. О, чуть не забыл. 19. Ну, ну, нечего бояться. 20. Перестань шуметь! 21. Да ведь это Джордж! 22. "Что ты любишь?" – спросил Том. – "Гм... Я люблю конфеты. А еще пирожные и шоколад", – ответила маленькая Бекки. – "Эх, я тоже", – признался Том.

## THE PREPOSITION

---

### 1. Put the prepositions from the list below into the correct column.

At, with, in front of, across, of, between, but for, by, among, until, towards, from, out of, during, outside, instead of, near, under, in accordance with, in, inside, in addition to, for, without, until, because of, upon, instead, thanks to, against, before, besides, down, in case of, below, except, within, apart from.

Simple	Derivative	Compound	Composite

### 2. Insert the correct preposition of time. Use the prepositions from the list below.

*at**in**on*

... the morning	... Saturday morning	... the 17 <sup>th</sup> century	... May 25 <sup>th</sup>
... a summer night	... the 10 <sup>th</sup> of October	... Tuesday evening	... February
... Wednesday	... Christmas	... night	... 2003
... 6.30	... the winter	... the weekend	... the night
... December	... noon	... Easter	... a winter morning

### 3. Choose the correct preposition of time.

1. Our Granny was born *- / in* 1940. 2. *On / At* Christmas Day people give each other presents. 3. Where was she *on / at* the weekend? 4. They went jogging *in / at* the evening. 5. The clock struck *- / in* midnight. 6. They met yesterday *in / -* evening. 7. There was terrible hurricane *at / -* last night. 8. The report should be ready *in / before* two weeks. 9. It snowed heavily *in / at* night. 10. She'll give you a ring tomorrow *- / in* morning. 11. In / At sunset the island looked magnificent. 12. Boss is busy *in / at* the moment. 13. Sorry, he is out. He'll be back *in / at* a few minutes. 14. This information may prove very useful *at / in* the near future. 15. A lot of magnificent Gothic churches were built *at / in* the Middle Ages. 16. In summer all students are *on / at* holidays. 17. He got married *in / at* the age of thirty. 18. My birthday is *on / at* the 30<sup>th</sup> of June. 19. They started speaking *- / at* the same time

interrupting each other. 19. *In / At* present they are working out a new management strategy. 20. They got married – / *in* last autumn.

#### 4. Choose the correct alternative.

1. I arrived at the station just *in time / on time* to catch the train. If I had come a few minutes later I would have missed the train. 2. The meeting starts at 9 a.m. I must be *in time / on time*. My report goes first. 3. The film was boring! *At the end / In the end* of it only a few people stayed there. 4. Mary was tired of arguing with her parents. *At the end / In the end* she broke off and left. 5. The Browns got to the hotel just *in time / on time*. A quarter of an hour later a terrible thunderstorm broke out. 6. Jess doesn't know what happened. She always goes to work by this bus. It's usually *in time / on time*. 7. Nick is a very punctual person. Something serious must have happened to prevent him from coming *in time / on time*. 8. When Carla and Jim were driving back home an elk suddenly ran across the road. Jim managed to stop the car just *in time / on time* not to injure the animal. 9. *At the end / In the end* of the match it started raining cats and dogs. 10. They arrived just *in time / on time*. Hardly had we said goodbye when the train departed.

#### 5. Complete the sentences with *at, on, in, during, until* or *by*. If no word is needed, leave a space (-).

1. She usually finishes work early ... Saturdays. 2. ... the time she gets that letter, I'll be in Florida. 3. He wrote this play ... her holiday. 4. She won't hand over the parcel ... they pay her. 5. Sandy isn't here... the moment, but she'll be back ... a few minutes. 6. Can you come to tea with us ... next Saturday? 7. Tim wants to be at the stadium early so that he is ... time to get good seats. 8. Don't touch anything ... the police arrive. 9. I should be free by 4 p.m. If the meeting doesn't end ... time, I'll have to make my apologies and leave. 10. He didn't want to help us at first, but ... the end he agreed to do what he could. 11. I have a lot of work to do, but I'll definitely be back ... the weekend. 12. Will he finish work ... time to do the shopping? 13. They used to have a party ... the end of the term. 14. We'd like to hold our next meeting ... 23rd of April. Will that suit you?

#### 6. Choose the correct preposition of place and direction.

1. Where are you going *on / for* your holidays this year? 2. They went for / on a walk round the village. 3. In Britain people drive *on / at* the left. 4. Kitty saw him *on / at* the bus-stop. 5. Bettie and Sara were sitting *on / at* the bank watching the sunset on the river. 6. *In / On* the north coast of England it will

rain heavily for another three days. 7. *At / In* the bottom of the page I saw my father's signature. 8. Write your name and address *in / at* the left-hand corner of the page. 9. The car stopped *on / at* the traffic lights and we got out. 10. Last Sunday we were *at / in* Mary's. It was her birthday. 11. The camp was located *among / between* the river and the village. 12. Jessica's husband is a sailor. But now he is not *at / in* sea. He is on holiday. 13. There were a lot of people *at / on* the bus. We couldn't get on. 14. They went to the station *on / in* a taxi. 15. He's got an alibi. He was *at / in* the dentist's between four and five o'clock. 16. Walk three blocks and turn – / *to* left. There you'll see the museum. 17. The tourists arrived *at / in* the hotel in the evening. 18. The train arrived *at / in* Amsterdam at daybreak. 19. I usually go to work *in / by* car. 20. They often go home *by / on* foot. 21. The helicopter flew *above / over* the houses and landed on the lawn. 22. They went *along / at* the shadowy alley towards a small cottage. 23. Shall I send the letter *on / by* air? 24. My friend usually goes to work *on / by* underground. 25. Let's go *to / for* a walk. It's so stuffy in here. 26. Just *above / over* her head she saw a strange thing. She realized at once that it was a UFO. 27. They left – / *for* as soon as they got the telegram. 28. Who is this *in / on* the photo? 29. She's standing *between / among* her guests pointing *on / at* a picture *above / over* the fireplace. 30. George had to stay *in / at* bed for a week. It was a severe chill.

### 7. Choose the correct preposition of various relations.

1. Lit *with / by* the sunrays, it produced an impression of something fantastic. 2. She worked *at / for* Coca-Cola for about two years and then changed her job. 3. Mark didn't say that *on / at* purpose. He didn't really mean to hurt her. 4. They met in Rome *on / by* chance. 5. Don't speak to her. She's *at / in* bad mood. 6. He said he knew her *by / with* sight. 7. Last week I spoke to her *by / on* the phone. 8. It was very kind *of / from* you to help her. 9. Their profits increased *on / by* 10 per cent last year. 10. The books *of / by* Arthur Conan Doyle are very popular. 11. What was the reason *for / of* closing the project? 12. Have they sent her an invitation *to / for* their wedding? 13. You should reply – / *to* their request as soon as possible. 14. What's his attitude *towards / for* your proposal? 15. You should contact – / *with* Mr. Johnson and clear up all the details. 16. I'm sorry *at / for* disturbing you. But it's urgent. 17. It was so stupid *of / from* him to act that way. 18. Are you aware *of / about* the fact that they sold their house? 19. Her cousin is interested *of / in* opera. 20. They stayed at home because *of / because* the rain. 21. Marmalade is made *from / of* oranges. 22. Steve is very rude. He

often shouts *on / at* his subordinates. 23. Did you phone – / *to* Mrs. Black? 24. Agatha Christie is famous *of / for* writing detective stories. 25. Her aunt is married *with / to* a famous film director. 26. This novel is very different *from / of* his previous ones. 27. The Inspector seemed to be very pleased *at / with* himself. 28. He spent half an hour looking *after / for* the file of the Hurston case. 29. My grandmother is very good *at / in* doing crosswords. 30. My son dreams *of / about* becoming an actor. 31. At night I was dreaming *of / about* something horrible. 32. The Airoflot was blamed *of / for* the plane crash. 33. I didn't feel like giving my opinion *on / about* the subject. 34. They finished up *with / by* tea and cherry tart. 35. Harry tried to open the tin *with / by* a pocket-knife.

### **8. Translate the sentences with composite prepositions into Russian.**

1. According to the information received by them, the steamer will arrive on the 11th of June. 2. In case of fire ring up 01. 3. We didn't go to the park because of the rain. 4. We arrived in London with a view to concluding an agreement for the purchase of a new plant. 5. In the event of the lecture being postponed due notice will be given. 6. The post office is just in front of our house. Give me the yellow pencil instead of the blue one. 7. We are sending you this information in addition to our telegram. 8. As for the trip, we'll speak about that later. 9. They finished the work in time in spite of all difficulties. 10. She signed the contract on behalf of the sellers.

### **9. Choose the correct alternative from those in brackets.**

1. He was driving (at/by) a speed (of /-) sixty kilometers (in/-) an hour. 2. He is desperately (in/at) love (with/by) some actress. We don't know her name but people say she has played (at/in) several films. 3. The letter was written (in/by) pencil (on/in) a yellowish sheet (of/on) paper. 4. (On/At) my way home I dropped in (at/on) the baker's to buy some bread. 5. Will you pay (in/-) cash or (in/by) credit card? 6. I'm going (-/at) home (at/in) ten minutes. What about you? 7. Are you here (on/at) business or (on/at) holiday? 8. The boat left (-/from) the pier (in/at) dark. 9. My mother never watches TV. She usually listens (to/-) the news (on/by) the radio. 10. Jane's suitcase disappeared when she was getting (off/out) the train. The porter said that somebody might have taken it (on/by) mistake. But she realized very well that it was not a mistake. It was done (on/by) purpose. 11. The plane is due to arrive (in/at) the airport (in/at) New York (-/at) 5 p.m. 12. "See you (on/in) Friday." – "Good bye! Don't forget (for/about) the appointment." 13. I spoke (with/about) the director (-/about) our new project but he didn't say anything

definite. 14. (Last autumn/In last autumn) we went (for/in) our holidays (in/to) Spain. 15. Tim is coming (at/on) 5 September. He is going to stay (by/with) us for a week. 16. My elder sister goes (at/to) work (on/by) bus. 17. (At/On) Christmas the children stayed (at/with) their grandparents. 18. We stayed (at/with) the hotel just a few minutes' walk (from/of) the sea. 19. (In next/Next) week the Shimmers are going (to/in) Malta. 20. Terry's granny looked (for/after) her (till/while) she was 4 years old. Then her parents took her (to/in) town. 21. The servant walked (through/across) the lawn and went (over/towards) the entrance door. 22. Our relatives went (to/in) Japan (for/on) business. 23. (On/At) Sunday Daisy usually stays (in/on) bed (by/until) 10 o'clock. 24. Kelly passed the Home Park, which stretches (along/through) the river bank (from/of) Albert (to/until) Victoria Bridge. 25. Mrs. Clark returned (from/of) the East not so long ago and she was shocked (with/at) the change in her brother. 26. Could you put this information (in/by) writing and send it (to/for) me (by/before) Thursday?

**10. Put in to where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave an empty space (-).**

1. I'd like to ask ... you a question. 2. Jerry won't be able to help you, so there is no point in asking ... him. 3. Don't forget to write ... me while you are away. 4. Kittie likes to listen ... the radio while she's having dinner. 5. I don't want to speak ... him anymore. 6. I thanked ... Dan for all the help he had given to me. 7. Nick described ... us how the accident happened. 8. He apologized ... me. 9. He explained ... them what he wanted them to do. 10. He shouted ... me from the other side of the street. 11. She asked ... for money. 12. You'd better phone ... the restaurant to reserve a table. 13. They only invited a few people ... their wedding anniversary.

**11. Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is needed, leave the space empty (-).**

1. Frank is 87 and lives alone. He needs somebody to care ... him. 2. She is very selfish. She doesn't care ... other people. 3. He can do what he likes. I don't care ... what he does. 4. Would you care ... a cup of tea? 5. Have a nice holiday. Take care ... yourself! 6. Can you help me to look ... my keys? 7. Who looked ... you when you were ill? 8. Jane is looking ... a new job. 9. A baby-sitter is someone who looks ... other people's children. 10. They asked me ... the way to the art gallery. 11. I wrote to the company asking them ... more information about the job. 12. She's applied ... a job at the factory. 13. If I want a job at the factory, who do I apply ...? 14. He's searched ... his keys but

he still can't find them. 15. Don't wait ... me. I'll join you later. 16. I'm leaving my house ... the airport at 6.30.

**12. Put in the correct preposition.**

1. I dreamed ... you last night. 2. She often dreams ... being rich. 3. "Who is Alfred Madely?" – "I've no idea. I've never heard ... him." 4. Did you hear ... the fire in the club on Friday night? 5. You look so serious. What are you thinking ...? 6. That's a good idea. Why didn't I think ... that? 7. "What did you think ... the film?" – "I didn't think much ... it." 8. I'm glad you reminded me ... the meeting. I had completely forgotten it. 9. Look at this photo of Jessica. Who does she remind you ...? 10. We complained ... the manager of the caf? ... the food. 11. Jim was complaining ... pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor. 12. Everybody has been warned ... the danger. 13. Vicky warned us ... the traffic. She said it would be bad.

**13. Put in the correct preposition.**

1. Jane accused me ... being selfish. 2. Five students were suspected ... cheating in the examination. 3. Her parents don't approve ... what she does, but they can't stop her. 4. "What did he die ...?" – "A heart attack." 5. They had an enormous meal. It consisted ... six courses. 6. The accident was Tom's fault, so he had to pay ... the damage. 7. I'll never forgive him ... what he did. 8. Are you going to apologize ... your misbehavior? 9. Everybody blamed him ... the accident. 10. Everybody blamed the accident ... me. 11. Everybody said that I was to blame ... the accident. 12. The number of people suffering ... heart disease has increased. 13. Sun oil can protect the skin ... the sun. 14. You can rely ... him. He always keeps his promises. 15. "What time will you arrive?" – "Well, I can't say exactly. It depends ... the traffic." 16. Jeffrey's salary is very low. It isn't enough to live ... . 17. We congratulated her ... her success in the exam.

**14. Put in the correct preposition.**

1. Do you believe ... God? 2. Ruth is a lawyer. She specializes ... company law. 3. I hope you succeed ... finding the job you want. 4. Their house was broken ... a few days ago but nothing was stolen. 5. She lost control of the car and crashed ... a wall. 6. The report is divided ... three parts. 7. Cut the meat ... small pieces before frying it. 8. Agatha Christie's books have been translated ... many languages. 9. There was an accident this afternoon. A bus collided ... a car. 10. Take this saucepan and fill it ... water. 11. The school provides all its students ... books. 12. What happened ... that gold watch you

used to have? 13. Well, as for me, I prefer coffee ... tea. 14. Don't look out of the window. Concentrate ... your work. 15. I wanted to go alone but she insisted ... coming with me. 16. How much money do you spend ... food each week?

### **15. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Самолет летел над облаками. 2. Я вам дам ответ в течение недели. 3. Температура была выше нуля. 4. Они поехали в Крым. 5. Он рассказал нам о своей поездке на юг. 6. Мальчик перебежал улицу. 7. Он бежал по дороге и что-то кричал. 8. Они были против нашего предложения. 9. Сад находится за домом. 10. Работа была разделена между пятью студентами. 11. Джейн вернется в шесть часов. 12. Сейчас около пяти часов. 13. Они жили на юге. 14. Мы поедем в горы на выходные. 15. Мы гуляли по парку и разговаривали. 16. Он закончит свою работу к понедельнику. 17. Летом они поедут на юг. 18. На свадьбе было около 150 человек. 19. Он плавает каждый день, кроме воскресенья. 20. Не сердись на нее. 21. Этот самолет совершает регулярные рейсы между Москвой и Адлером. 22. Это письмо для Джейн. 23. Она работает на фабрике. 24. Он сделал большие успехи в испанском языке в течение последних двух месяцев. 25. Кроме немецкого языка, он не знает ни одного иностранного языка. 26. Я послал его за доктором. 27. Кроме немецкого языка, он знает английский и французский. 28. Девушка стояла у окна и смотрела в окно. 29. Он вернется через неделю. 30. Над столом висела люстра. 31. Она положила контракт в сейф. 32. Нож упал со стола. 33. Сыр делается из молока. 34. Он прошел мимо дома. 35. Мы не видели Инну с четверга. 36. Он шел по направлению к морю. 37. Они останутся у нас до воскресенья. 38. Он поднялся по лестнице. 39. Она вышла, не сказав ни слова. 40. Большой грузовик стоял поперек дороги. 41. Каково ваше мнение по этому вопросу? 42. Часы сделаны из золота. 43. Он живет с родителями. 44. Мэри закончит работу до четырех часов. 45. Я это слышал раньше. 46. Я не смогу это сделать без вашей помощи. 47. Он вернулся домой после одиннадцати.

### **16. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Мы извинились перед ним за ошибку. 2. Эти книги принадлежат мне. 3. Что случилось с ней? 4. Это поле будет превращено в парк. 5. Я хочу сообщить ему об этом факте. 6. О чем вы говорите? 7. Мы поздравили его с успехом. 8. Я настаиваю на Вашем присутствии. 9. Ты мо-

жешь положиться на меня. 10. Я напомнил ему о его обещании. 11. Он не комментировал этого события. 12. Книга разделена на десять глав. 13. Она согласилась со мной. 14. О чем ты думаешь? 15. Этот факт должен быть принят во внимание. 16. Переведите эту статью на русский язык. 17. Он потратил много денег на этот дом. 18. Послушай меня! 19. В чем обвинялся этот человек? 20. Презентация состоит из 16 слайдов. 21. Стороны договорились об условиях контракта. 22. Она не обратила внимания на этот факт. 23. Это не зависит от меня. 24. Она предпочитает яблоки сливам. 25. Я поговорю с ним по этому вопросу. 26. Они приложили к письму копию телеграммы. 27. Она согласилась на мое предложение. 28. Он возражал против моего предложения. 29. Мне кажется, что что-то не так. 30. Анна ответила на его письмо два дня назад. 31. Я согласна с вами. 32. Ему приходится иметь дело с людьми различного рода.

### **17. Translate the sentences into English. Use composite prepositions.**

1. Благодаря новому оборудованию мы успешно закончили эксперимент. 2. Согласно официальным данным, уровень жизни в стране постепенно повышается. 3. Несмотря на все трудности, он добился большого успеха. 4. Дай мне новый словарь вместо старого. 5. Нам пришлось отложить поездку в горы из-за плохих погодных условий. 6. Перед музеем расположен большой красивый фонтан. 7. Что касается меня, я не хочу вмешиваться в его дела. 8. Все хорошо, за исключением нескольких ошибок. 9. В случае необходимости Вы можете связаться с нами по электронной почте. 10. Если бы не он, я бы опоздала на рейс.

## THE CONJUNCTION

---

### **1. Put the conjunctions from the list below into the correct column.**

As well as, but, either...or, and, both...and, or, however, since, after, as long as, before, because, on condition that, lest, such...that, until, in order that, as...as, though, whereas, while, not only...but also, neither...nor, wherever.

Simple	Derivative	Compound	Composite

**2. Put the following coordinating conjunctions from the list below into the correct column.**

Or, and, as well as, either...or, but, not only...but also, both...and, else, while, so, for, neither...nor, not only...but (also), nor, whereas.

Copulative	Disjunctive	Adversative	Causative-consecutive

**3. Join each pair of sentences to make a longer sentence. Use each of the conjunctions in the box twice.**

*and                      but                      because                      so*

*E.g.: I wanted to go to the cinema. I had no time. – I wanted to go to the cinema, but I had no time.*

1. She was a very hungry. She had no time to eat.
2. The film was boring. I left.
3. I can't lend you money. I don't have it.
4. The library opens at 9 a.m. It closes at 7 p.m.
5. My husband was ill. I had to take the children to school.
6. The bus was slow. There was a lot of traffic.
7. I'd like to go to the cinema. I can't go there on Saturday.
8. She took a book from the bookcase. She went to the bedroom.

**4. Read the text and complete the sentences with the correct linking word from the list below.**

*however                      because                      and (2)*  
*while                      although (2)                      so*

Nikomo wakes up at 4 o'clock in the morning \_\_\_\_\_ makes tea \_\_\_\_\_ his wife cooks breakfast. \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't have a large breakfast, just a cup of strong, sweet tea. Work starts at 5 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ continuous until 12 o'clock. Nobody works after that time \_\_\_\_\_ it gets too hot. Nikomo usually goes to sleep under a tree. \_\_\_\_\_ after three hours it's

time to start work again. His boss gives him food and drink during the day \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't have to pay extra for his meals. \_\_\_\_\_ he quite likes his job. But, of course, he would like his boss to pay him more money.

### 5. Make sentences using *although* and *however*.

*E.g.: we haven't got a lot of money / we eat quite well / we don't buy expensive food – Although we haven't got a lot of money, we eat quite well. However, we don't buy expensive food.*

1. I like my job / I know I could find a better one / I don't have time to look for one
2. She is only sixteen / she is quite grown-up / I don't think she should leave school yet
3. She speaks some Spanish / she isn't very fluent / she doesn't need Spanish for her job
4. He's lazy / he is, in fact, quite intelligent / he has to work hard to pass his exams

### 6. Complete the sentences where necessary with *as if* or *like*. Sometimes no words are necessary to complete the sentences.

1. He looks \_\_\_\_\_ he needs a good night's sleep.
2. They've only just met and yet they behave \_\_\_\_\_ a married couple.
3. Alison looks \_\_\_\_\_ very smart today. Is she going for an interview?
4. Gosh, you're pale. You look \_\_\_\_\_ you've seen a ghost.
5. When she doesn't get her own way, she acts just \_\_\_\_\_ a child.
6. That stereo looks \_\_\_\_\_ it cost a lot.
7. He's so in love he walks around all day \_\_\_\_\_ he's in a dream.
8. You sound \_\_\_\_\_ a bit depressed. Is everything OK?

### 7. Use *as* or *than* to complete these sentences so that they are grammatically correct. (You don't have to agree with them!)

1. Girls work harder...boys.
2. Girls are more talkative ... boys.
3. Boys aren't as clever ... boys.
4. Girls write more neatly ... boys.
5. Girls aren't as healthy ... boys.
6. At school, girls have the same problems ... boys.

### 8. Put *in case* or *if*.

1. I'll draw a map for you \_\_\_\_\_ you can't find our house.
2. We'll buy some more food \_\_\_\_\_ Tom comes.

3. We bought some more bread \_\_\_\_\_ Dan came.
4. You should inform the police \_\_\_\_\_ your car is stolen.
5. He'll give you his phone number \_\_\_\_\_ you need contact him.
6. I rang the bell again \_\_\_\_\_ they hadn't heard it the first time.
7. He doesn't want to go out tonight \_\_\_\_\_ Betsy phones.
8. This book is for Jane. Can you give it to her \_\_\_\_\_ you see her?

**9. Fill in the gaps with *by, until, while, before, hardly...when, as soon as, when, as long as or by the time.***

1. She can keep that book for \_\_\_\_\_ she likes.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Rachel reached the travel agency, it had closed.
3. We can't do any washing \_\_\_\_\_ the washing machine is repaired.
4. They saw the smoke \_\_\_\_\_ they turned into their street.
5. We must be home \_\_\_\_\_ ten o'clock tonight.
6. She had \_\_\_\_\_ gone to bed \_\_\_\_\_ there was a knock at the door.
7. Ann parked the car \_\_\_\_\_ Phillip dashed into the bank.
8. She was cooking supper \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone rang.
9. She told her friend to wait there \_\_\_\_\_ she got back.
10. He has to finish these letters \_\_\_\_\_ he can leave the office.

**10. Complete the sentences. Use *either ... or / neither ... nor.***

1. "Did anybody visit him last weekend?" – "Nobody did. ... Jane ... Robert came there."
2. "Have you finished your project yet?" – "No, I haven't. But I hope to finish it ... tomorrow ... the day after tomorrow."
3. Ask your friends for help. ... Mary ... Anny will help you.
4. ... his mother's words ... his father's arguments had any effect on him.
5. It's getting dark. You must ... go at once ... wait till tomorrow.
6. What's happened to Julia? She has ... written ... phoned.
7. Nelly lived ... in Brighton ... in ... Peacehaven, didn't she?
8. She would like to help you little. She can ... wash up ... walk the dog.
9. The house was ... big ... comfortable, was it?
10. Ann lives not far from us. She has ... bought a new flat ... rented it.

**11. Translate the following sentences into Russian.**

1. But for her I should have missed the bus.
2. Apart from the high price, the terms of payment and delivery do not suit us.
3. The sun has set, but it's still light.
4. She'll get the letter tomorrow if you send it off now.
5. Stay here until I come back.
6. Although she wrote to him, she has had no reply.
7. Will

you please tell us whether she has come or not? 8. That needs no explanation since it is self-evident. 9. We decided to go further in spite of the fact that the road was so bad. 10. Both the wheat and the barley will be shipped tomorrow.

## 12. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Она в совершенстве говорит по-немецки, хотя она никогда не была в Германии. 2. Джейн уже закончила работу, так что в субботу она может поехать на море. 3. Я встаю так же рано, как и ты. 4. Я это сделаю, как ты мне сказала. 5. Так как я не видела этот фильм, я не могу тебе ничего о нем сказать. 6. Я одолжу тебе деньги при условии, если ты вернешь мне их в воскресенье. 7. Она это сделает, как только придет домой. 8. Что она делала с тех пор, как я ее видел в последний раз? 9. Приедут ли они завтра, еще неизвестно. 10. Поспешь, иначе не успеешь на поезд.

## PHRASAL VERBS

---

### 1. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below

*to look at*

*to look for*

*to look up*

*to look out*

*to look over*

*to look into*

1. Lily's mother expects her \_\_\_\_\_ her directly while she is speaking to her.

2. The police detective wanted \_\_\_\_\_ the cause of the accident.

3. Millie went to the library \_\_\_\_\_ some information for her research paper.

4. Before the important exam, I \_\_\_\_\_ my lecture notes for the class.

5. Phillip can't seem to locate his car keys. Could you help him \_\_\_\_\_ them?

6. \_\_\_\_\_! There's a truck coming towards us quickly.

### 2. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.

*to come across**to come in**to come down**to come by**to come out**to come away**to come of age*

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ John Smith yesterday. She hadn't seen him for several years.
2. Henry \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast at 9 o'clock.
3. "How \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ this book?" – "I \_\_\_\_\_ it in a second-hand bookshop.
4. When \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_? – In two weeks.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ from that machine or you may get hurt.
6. She knocked at the door and cried, "\_\_\_\_\_."

**3. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

*to give out**to give up**to give in**to give away*

1. He pretended to be English but his foreign accent \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the books in half an hour.
3. Hob said he was going to \_\_\_\_\_ smoking.
4. She'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ her studies because of lack of money.

**4. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

*to turn up**to turn round**to turn over**to turn for**to turn on**to turn to**to turn aside*

1. When she is in trouble she always \_\_\_\_\_ her parents for help.
2. The wheels of the cart \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She could not be \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Mr. Priestley is heavily in debt and he doesn't know which way to \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Jane isn't here yet. She probably \_\_\_\_\_ at all.
6. George had been very lazy but he was going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new leaf and work hard.
7. When Kate became rich she \_\_\_\_\_ her back \_\_\_\_\_ her old friends.

**5. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

*to break up**to break down**to break into*

1. The school \_\_\_\_\_ on the 30<sup>th</sup> of May.
2. The police \_\_\_\_\_ the door and entered the room.
3. You can \_\_\_\_\_ the box for firewood.
4. The little boy \_\_\_\_\_ tears and cried as if his heart would break.
5. The car \_\_\_\_\_ when I was ten miles from home.

**6. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

<i>to bring up</i>	<i>to bring to</i>	<i>to bring in</i>
<i>to bring out</i>	<i>to bring along</i>	<i>to bring back</i>
	<i>to bring about</i>	<i>to bring on</i>

1. Dan \_\_\_\_\_ to believe in the "Divine Right of Kings".
2. Yesterday she \_\_\_\_\_ trial in London.
3. George \_\_\_\_\_ some colour photographs tomorrow.
4. What \_\_\_\_\_ the failure of the business?
5. The sight of that heather \_\_\_\_\_ the happy days we spent in France.
6. The jury \_\_\_\_\_ a verdict of "not guilty".
7. Her illness \_\_\_\_\_ by poor feeding.
8. The publishers are going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new edition of that book.

**7. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

<i>to call at</i>	<i>to call for</i>	<i>to call in</i>
<i>to call out</i>	<i>to call away</i>	

1. The drowning man \_\_\_\_\_ for help.
2. The ship \_\_\_\_\_ Gibraltar.
3. The film at the cinema starts at 8.30. I \_\_\_\_\_ you at 8.00.
4. Mr. Brown is not at home. He \_\_\_\_\_ on business.
5. If you are near my home any time \_\_\_\_\_ and see me.

**8. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

<i>to fall down</i>	<i>to fall into</i>	<i>to fall out</i>
<i>to fall on</i>	<i>to fall in</i>	<i>to fall through</i>
	<i>to fall back on</i>	<i>to fall over</i>

1. The little girl was running and \_\_\_\_\_. I think she \_\_\_\_\_ a stone.
2. In this office most of the work seems to \_\_\_\_\_ me.

3. We didn't have any bread in the house and the shops were closed so that we had to \_\_\_\_\_ biscuits.

4. The question to be answered \_\_\_\_\_ three parts.

5. Phillip \_\_\_\_\_ love with Ann.

6. Harry and Ben \_\_\_\_\_.

7. She had great plans for her business but they \_\_\_\_\_.

**9. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

*to pull down*

*to pull in*

*to pull out*

*to pull round*

*to pull up*

1. Take the car a little further along the street. You'll find a place to \_\_\_\_\_ there.

2. She went to the dentist to have a tooth \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The girl has been very ill but I think she \_\_\_\_\_ soon.

4. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ that building \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The child ran in front of the car and I had to \_\_\_\_\_.

**10. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the phrasal verbs listed below.**

*to put down*

*to put in (2)*

*to put up (2)*

*to put off*

*to put up with*

*to put on*

*to put out*

1. I want to \_\_\_\_\_ an hour or two's work before dinner.

2. We \_\_\_\_\_ at a very good hotel in Madrid.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ the light \_\_\_\_\_ before you go to bed.

4. Olaf is going to \_\_\_\_\_ for a job with a business firm.

5. You \_\_\_\_\_ a proportion of money – say ten per cent – and pay off the rest at so much a month.

6. They have \_\_\_\_\_ the price of coal again.

7. Never \_\_\_\_\_ till tomorrow what you can do today.

8. The hotel is not good but we are only staying for two days so we can \_\_\_\_\_ it.

9. Her modesty is all \_\_\_\_\_.

**11. Choose the appropriate phrasal verb to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.**

1. Her alarm clock is always set for seven o'clock. She *arises* at the same time every day.

- a) turns off
  - b) gets up
  - c) puts on
2. Mary *telephoned* her friend to tell him about the meeting.
- a) turned on
  - b) took off
  - c) called up
3. Be sure *to switch off* the light before you leave the house.
- a) to turn off
  - b) to take off
  - c) to get off
4. Daisy *placed* her new hat *on her head* while looking in the mirror.
- a) picked up
  - b) put on
  - c) gets on
5. *Remove* your coat and sit down for a couple of minutes.
- a) turn on
  - b) get on
  - c) take off
6. He *boarded* the bus at Broadway and 79th Street.
- a) got off
  - b) got on
  - c) picked up
7. Nelly *took* the pen *with her fingers* and began to write a letter.
- a) turned on
  - b) got off
  - c) picked up
8. Were you able *to determine* what her secret is?
- a) to find out
  - b) to pick up
  - c) to call on
9. A friend of mine *visited* us last night.
- a) called on
  - b) called up
  - c) wore out
10. I think that you should *remove* the last two sentences in the paragraph.
- a) take out
  - b) pick out
  - c) talk over

11. How is he *succeeding* in his new project?
- a) getting on with
  - b) picking out
  - c) making a difference to
12. Did he *go on a date with* his new girlfriend again last night?
- a) get along with
  - b) stand up
  - c) go out with
13. I'll have to *locate* his number in the telephone book.
- a) to think over
  - b) to wait on
  - c) to look up
14. Our guests will arrive soon; please *remove* your dirty clothes *from sight*.
- a) try on
  - b) put away
  - c) get off
15. Jerry wanted to *postpone* the meeting for another two or three weeks.
- a) to call off
  - b) to put off
  - c) to turn off
16. If you don't *be careful*, you'll cut your hands on that sharp knife.
- a) look up
  - b) watch out
  - c) make up your mind
17. He *expected* the contract *carefully* before signing it.
- a) looked over
  - b) looked out
  - c) counted on
18. What's *happening*, Nick? The smoke alarm is ringing but there's no fire.
- a) putting out
  - b) going on
  - c) hanging up
19. The phone is making noise because you forgot to *replace* the receiver.
- a) to go over
  - b) to take place
  - c) to hang up
20. I'll have to *solve* this problem by myself.
- a) to point out

- b) to be over
  - c) to figure out
21. Terry couldn't wait for the meeting *to end* so that she could go home.
- a) to call off
  - b) to be through
  - c) to put away
22. Before Andy takes a college-level chemistry class, he should *review* his chemistry from high school.
- a) brush up on
  - b) look over
  - c) be out to
23. Rose can't *understand* why she's having trouble with the engine of her car.
- a) turn around
  - b) figure out
  - c) step out
24. You should *stir* the milk and eggs before you add the butter.
- a) cut down on
  - b) mix up
  - c) come from
25. Betty never seems to study. How is she *progressing* in her coursework?
- a) making out
  - b) coming from
  - c) looking over
26. This red shirt doesn't *match* your blue trousers at all.
- a) go with
  - b) get rid of
  - c) come from
27. Harry asked the police to *investigate* the theft of his car radio last Monday.
- a) to look for
  - b) to look over
  - c) to look into
28. The coach *inflated* several of the players' soccer balls that were too soft.
- a) broke out
  - b) made out
  - c) blew up
29. If she continues without taking a break, this difficult work will *make her tired*.

- a) burn her out
- b) burn her up
- c) burn her down

30. As it *resulted*, Mary didn't have to worry about the contest; she won it easily.

- a) turned out
- b) made up
- c) was over

## THE PARTICLE

---

### 1. Put the particles from the list below into the correct column.

Still, never, too, merely, not, but, only, barely, simply, alone, also, just, yet, quite, even, all.

Simple	Derivative	Compound	Composite

### 2. Make one sentence from two. Use *so* or *such*.

She worked too hard.

You could hear it from miles away.

It was a windy day.

You would think he was a native speaker.

He was exhausted.

They spent the whole day indoors.

They had a good time in the country.

She made herself ill.

He speaks French well.

He couldn't even watch TV.

The explosion was huge.

He didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.

He had a big breakfast.

We couldn't go out.

It was cold weather.

They didn't want to return home.

### 3. Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using *too* or *enough*.

*E.g.: We couldn't eat the soup. It was too hot. – The soup was too hot to eat.*

1. I can't drink this tea. It's too hot.
2. Nobody could move the sofa. It was too heavy.
3. She doesn't wear this hat in winter. It isn't warm enough.
4. I can't explain the problem. It is too complicated.
5. Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't wide enough.
6. He couldn't climb over the wall. It was too high.
7. You can't wear these sneakers. They are too small.

**4. Complete the sentences using the words in brackets. Use *quite* with the positive word and *rather* with the negative word as in the example.**

*E.g.: She's \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_. (smart/lazy) – She's quite smart but rather lazy.*

1. Rachel is \_\_\_\_\_ but her husband is \_\_\_\_\_. (disappointed / pleased)
2. The film was \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_. (long / interesting)
3. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ but it's \_\_\_\_\_ work. (well-paid / hard)
4. Our sitting room is \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_. (small / cosy)
5. John lived \_\_\_\_\_ them but it was \_\_\_\_\_ to get to his house. (near / difficult)
6. Mrs. Morgan is \_\_\_\_\_ but she's \_\_\_\_\_. (a good worker / slow)

**5. Choose the right item.**

1. My cousin is not very tall. She is (merely/only/ barely) tall enough to go on the adult roller-coaster ride at Disneyland.
2. I (touched it merely/merely touched it) and it broke.
3. It's rather cheap. It's (just/barely/merely) three dollars.
4. I had (barely/merely/only) closed my eyes to go to sleep before it was time to get up again.
5. This man is like my ex-husband, (barely, merely, only) better.
6. I'm sorry, I can't give you any sugar. I (barely, merely) have enough sugar to for my coffee.

**6. Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.**

<i>only</i>	<i>hardly</i>	<i>just (exactly)</i>	<i>even</i>
<i>almost</i>	<i>merely</i>	<i>simply</i>	<i>possibly</i>

1. I can \_\_\_\_\_ tell you what I know.
2. It's \_\_\_\_\_ six o'clock.

3. They could \_\_\_\_\_ understand him.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ asked her surname.
5. It is \_\_\_\_\_ what I think.
6. I'm afraid I can't \_\_\_\_\_ go there tonight.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ a child can understand it.
8. His knowledge is \_\_\_\_\_ awful.

### **7. Translate the following sentences into Russian.**

1. The lights had been lowered, and from where she sat it looked more than ever like a scene in a play. "All the world's a stage, and all the men and women merely players." (W. Shakespeare) 2. She looked perplexed for a moment, and then said, not fiercely, but still loud enough for the furniture to hear.... (M. Twain) 3. It was so unreal, even in the crude light of midday, that it withdrew her from the reality of life. (W.S. Maugham) 4. "I'm simply tired out," she said. "I'd willingly give five hundred francs for a sleeper." (W.S. Maugham) 5. He got back home barely in season to help Jim, the small colored boy, saw next-day's wood and split the kindlings before supper – at least he was there in time to tell his adventures to Jim while Jim did three-fourths of the work. (M. Twain) 6. I quite understand that psychohistory is a statistical science and cannot predict the future of a single man with any accuracy. (A. Asimov) 7. He never spoke of the softer passions, save with a gibe and a sneer. (A.C. Doyle) 8. He went on playing in the mud just the same, and enjoying it, too; but, instead of splashing around in the Thames solely for the fun of it, he began to find an added value in it because of the washings and cleansings it afforded. (M. Twain) 9. "Holmes," I cried, "I seem to see dimly what you are hinting at. We are only just in time to prevent some subtle and horrible crime." (A.C. Doyle) 10. How could he answer it to himself to rob his child, and his only child too, of so large a sum? And what possible claim could the Miss Dashwoods, who were related to him only by half blood, which she considered as no relationship at all, have on his generosity to so large an amount. (J. Austen) 11. "It's just the very biggest thing that I ever heard of!" said I, though it was my journalistic rather than my scientific enthusiasm that was roused. "It is colossal. You are a Columbus of science who has discovered a lost world." (A.C. Doyle) 12. "He has marked your poor face! Oh, George, what a brute you are! Nothing but scandals from one end of the week to the other. Everyone hating and making fun of you. You've finished my patience. This ends it." (A.C. Doyle)

**8. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Джон, Эдди и даже Гарри помогли ей переехать на новую квартиру.
2. Он еще не уехал. Ты все еще можешь с ним встретиться.
3. Она не может во всем винить своих родителей. Она тоже должна взять на себя долю ответственности.
4. Я не очень люблю бананы. Мой брат их тоже не любит.
5. Она как раз тот человек, который знает об этом все.
6. Она просто не выносит, когда ей врут.
7. Не ругайся! Анна просто хотела тебе помочь.
8. У нее только один день, чтобы подготовиться к экзамену.
9. Они умоляли ее не никому говорить об этом.
10. – Я могу положиться на него? – Боюсь, что нет.

## REFERENCES

---

1. Агабекян И.П. Английский язык для ссузов: учебное пособие. – М.: Велби; Проспект, 2006. – 280 с.
2. Березина О.А., Шпилюк Е.М. Английский язык для студентов университетов. Упражнения по грамматике. – СПб., 2000. – 204 с.
3. Блинова С.И., Черехова Е.П., Чернышёва Г.С., Синицкая Е.И. Практика Английского языка : сборник упражнений по грамматике. Серия: "Изучаем иностранные языки". – СПб.: Лениздат; Союз, 2000. – 384 с.
4. Выборова Г., Макмурян К. Сборник упражнений по английской грамматике. – М., 1998. – 176 с.
5. Голицинский Ю.Б. Грамматика: сборник упражнений. – СПб.: КАРО, 2001. – 512 с.
6. Гордеева Е. America the Beautiful: грамматический справочник. – М.: Научно-образовательный центр "Школа Китайгородской", 1999. – 108 р.
7. Гордеева Е., Курилов В., Лав М. America the Beautiful: Рабочая тетрадь – М.: Школа Китайгородской, 1999. – 183 с.
8. Гуревич В.В. Практическая грамматика английского языка. Упражнения и комментарии: учебное пособие / В.В. Гуревич. – М.: Флинта; Наука, 2003. – 296 с.
9. Качалова К.Н., Израилевич Е.Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями и ключами. – М., 1999. – 304 с.
10. Кравченко О.Ф., Ярмолюк А.В. 516 упражнений по грамматике английского языка. – М., 2000. – 384 с.
11. Любимцева С.Н., Тарковская Б.М., Памукина Л.Г. Деловой английский для начинающих: учебник. – 5-е изд., перераб. и доп. – М.: ГИС, 2000. – 368 с.
12. Правила и упражнения по английскому языку: 1-10 годы обучения / авт.-сост. И.М. Гиндлина, Т.М. Пименова; под ред. И.О. Родина, Т.М. Пименовой. – М.: Астрель; АСТ, 2002. – 478 с.
13. Резник Р.В., Сорокина Т.С., Казарицкая Т.В. Грамматика английского языка: Теория. – М.: Ин. язык, 2001. – 688 с.
14. Резник Р.В., Сорокина Т.С., Казарицкая Т.В., Резник И.В. Грамматика английского языка: Упражнения. Ключи к упражнениям. – М.: Ин. язык, 2001. – 176 с.
15. Родин И.О., Пименова, Т.М. Вся грамматика английского языка с упражнениями / под редакцией И.О. Родина, Т.М. Пименовой. – М.: Родин и компания; АСТ, 1999. – 512 с.
16. Федотова, И.Г. Ишевская, Н.А. Ускоренный курс английского языка: учеб. пособие для неяз. спец. Вузов. – М.: Высш. шк., 1989. – 288 с.
17. Шевелева С.А., Скворцова М.В. Бизнес-английский: учеб. пособие для вузов. – М.: ЮНИТИ-ДАНА, 2001. – 264 с.
18. Шевелёва С.А., Стогов В.Е. Основы экономики и бизнеса: учеб. пособие. – 2-е изд., перераб. и доп. – М.: ЮНИТИ, 1999. – 503 с.
19. Abbs V., Freebairn I. Blueprint Two. Workbook. Longman, 1996.
20. Asimov I. Foundation.
21. Austen J. Pride and Prejudice.
22. Austen J. Sense and Sensibility.

23. Bronte Ch. Jane Eyre.
24. Carroll L. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.
25. Chesterton G. The Incredulity of Father Brown.
26. Christie A. The Mysterious Affair at Styles.
27. Dickens Ch. David Copperfield.
28. Dixon R.J. Essential Idioms in English. New ed. Longman, 2003.
29. Doyle A.C. The Adventure of the Dying Detective
30. Doyle A.C. The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes
31. Doyle A.C. The Hound of the Baskervilles
32. Doyle A.C. The Lost World
33. Doyle A.C. The Return of Sherlock Holmes
34. Eckersley C.E. Essential English for Foreign Students, Foreign Languages Press, Sofia, 1966.
35. Galsworthy J. The White Monkey.
36. Gardner E. The Case of the Perjured Parrot.
37. Hashemi L., Murphy R. English Grammar in Use. Supplementary Exercises. Cambridge University Press, 1996.
38. Jerome K. Jerome Three Men in a Boat
39. Lawley J., O'Neill H., Bradbury T. Fountain. Coursebook 4 Intermediate. Longman, 1996.
40. Maugham W.S. The Magician
41. Maugham W.S. The Painted Veil.
42. Maugham W.S. Theatre
43. Murphy R. English Grammar in Use. A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students. 2-nd edition. Cambridge University Press, 1997.
44. Twain M. The Adventures of Tom Sawyer
45. Twain M. The Prince and the Pauper
46. Аксельруд Д.А. Как работает английская грамматика: учебное пособие / Д.А. Аксельруд, Н.А. Селезнева, С.А. Заварзина. – М.: АСТ: Восток–Запад, 2008. – 287, [1] с.
47. Каушанская В.Л. Грамматика английского языка. Пособие для студентов педагогических институтов / В.Л. Каушанская, Р.Л. Ковнер, О.Н. Кожевникова, Е.В. Прокофьева и др. – 6-е изд. – М.: Айрис-пресс, 2012. – 384 с.
48. Качалова К.Н., Израилевич Е.Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями и ключами. – М.: ЮНВЕСТ ЛИСТ, 2000. – 718 с.
49. Неличные формы глагола: Практикум по грамматике английского языка. Составители: Г.И. Туголукова, Л.К. Голубева, Н.М. Пригоровская, И.Ф. Беляева. – М.: Издательство "Менеджер", 2004. – 160 с.
50. Николенко Т.Г. Тесты по грамматике английского языка. – М.: Рольф, Айрис-пресс, 1998. – 160 с.
51. Практична граматика англійської мови для студентів 3 курсу. Неособисті форми дієслова. Дієприкметник. – Харків, 2012.
52. Тарнаева Л.П. Тесты по грамматике английского языка: Учебное пособие. – СПб.: ООО "Инъязиздат", 2006. – 320 с.

# Содержание

---

THE NOUN-----	3
THE ARTICLE-----	8
THE ADJECTIVE-----	20
THE PRONOUN-----	26
THE NUMERALS-----	34
THE WORDS OF THE CATEGORY OF STATE-----	42
THE VERB-----	43
TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. THE INDEFINITE FORM.	
THE PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE-----	50
THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE-----	56
THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE-----	61
THE FUTURE IN THE PAST-----	67
THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE-----	71
THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE-----	76
THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE-----	82
THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE-----	87
THE PAST PERFECT TENSE-----	95
THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE-----	101
THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE-----	108
THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE-----	113
THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE-----	120
THE PASSIVE VOICE-----	126
THE MODAL VERBS-----	132
THE MOOD-----	141
THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB (THE VERBALS).	
THE PARTICIPLE-----	147
THE GERUND-----	153

THE INFINITIVE-----	160
THE ADVERB-----	166
THE MODAL WORDS-----	170
THE INTERJECTION-----	171
THE PREPOSITION-----	174
THE CONJUNCTION-----	181
PHRASAL VERBS-----	185
THE PARTICLE-----	192
REFERENCES-----	196

*Учебное издание*

---

**ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА  
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА: сборник  
упражнений для студентов языковых  
специальностей педагогических вузов**

---

МАКАРОВА О.С.  
ПАВЛЕНКО В.Г.  
КАРДУМЯН М.С.

*в авторской редакции*

---

---

Главный редактор **А.Д. Григорьева**  
Дизайн обложки **М.А. Мирошниченко**  
Техническое редактирование и верстка **П.В. Арсентьева**

---

Сдано в набор 28.10.2019. Подписано в печать 01.11.2019. Формат 60 x 84<sup>1/16</sup>. Бумага офсетная.  
Гарнитура Calibri. Уч.-изд. л. 12,38. Печ. л. 19,00. Тираж 50 экз. Заказ № 510.

**Издательство «Ставролит», тел.: 8(962) 452-84-02,  
e-mail: info@stavrolit.ru, сайт: stavrolit.ru**